

SECTION A — HUMAN NECESSITIES

A61 MEDICAL OR VETERINARY SCIENCE; HYGIENE

A61B DIAGNOSIS; SURGERY; IDENTIFICATION (analysing biological material G01N, e.g. G01N 33/48)

Note(s)

This subclass covers instruments, implements, and processes for diagnostic, surgical and person-identification purposes, including obstetrics, instruments for cutting corns, vaccination instruments, finger-printing, psycho-physical tests.

Subclass index

MEDICINAL METHODS (NON-SURGICAL).....	1/00, 5/00, 17/00
INSTRUMENTS FOR PSYCHO-PHYSICAL TESTS.....	5/00
MEDICAL INSTRUMENTS	
For auscultation and diagnostics.....	5/00-10/00
For medical examination of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body and the eyes.....	1/00, 3/00
Aids for examination and care of the mouth.....	1/00, 13/00
SURGICAL INSTRUMENTS, DEVICES OR METHODS.....	17/00, 18/00
OTHER INSTRUMENTS, IMPLEMENTS OR ACCESSORIES FOR SURGERY OR DIAGNOSIS.....	34/00-90/00

Diagnosis: Psycho-physical tests

- 1/00 Instruments for performing medical examinations of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body by visual or photographic inspection, e.g. endoscopes** (examination of body cavities or body tracts using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/12; endoscopic instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy A61B 10/04; for surgical purposes A61B 17/00; endoscopic surgical instruments A61B 17/94; surgical instruments using a laser beam being directed along or through a flexible conduit A61B 18/22); **illuminating arrangements therefor** (for the eyes A61B 3/00) [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 1/002 • having rod-lens arrangements (A61B 1/055 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 1/005 • Flexible endoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/008 • • Articulations [6, 2006.01]
- 1/01 • • Guiding arrangements therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 1/012 • characterised by internal passages or accessories therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 1/015 • • Control of fluid supply or evacuation [6, 2006.01]
- 1/018 • • for receiving instruments [6, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • combined with photographic or television appliances [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 1/045 • • Control thereof [6, 2006.01]
- 1/05 • • characterised by the image sensor, e.g. camera, being in the distal end portion [6, 2006.01]
- 1/055 • • having rod-lens arrangements [6, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • with illuminating arrangements [1, 2006.01]
- 1/07 • • using light-conductive means, e.g. optical fibres [6, 2006.01]
- 1/12 • with cooling or rinsing arrangements (A61B 1/015 takes precedence) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 1/227 • for ears, i.e. otoscopes [6, 2006.01]

- 1/233 • for the nose, i.e. nasoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/24 • for the mouth, i.e. stomatoscopes, e.g. with tongue depressors (tongue depressors per se A61B 13/00); Instruments for opening or keeping open the mouth (combined with saliva removers A61C 17/10) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 1/247 • • with means for viewing areas outside the direct line of sight, e.g. dentists' mirrors [6, 2006.01]
- 1/253 • • • with means for preventing fogging [6, 2006.01]
- 1/267 • for the respiratory tract, e.g. laryngoscopes, bronchoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/273 • for the upper alimentary canal, e.g. oesophoscopes, gastroscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/303 • for the vagina, i.e. vaginoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/307 • for the urinary organs, e.g. urethroscopes, cystoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/31 • for the rectum, e.g. proctoscopes, sigmoidoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/313 • for introducing through surgical openings, e.g. laparoscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/317 • • for bones or joints, e.g. osteoscopes, arthroscopes [6, 2006.01]
- 1/32 • Devices for opening or enlarging the visual field, e.g. of a tube of the body (dilators A61M 29/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/00 Apparatus for testing the eyes; Instruments for examining the eyes** (eye inspection using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/10) [1, 4, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • Subjective types, i.e. testing apparatus requiring the active assistance of the patient [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/024 • • for determining the visual field, e.g. perimeter types [5, 2006.01]
- 3/028 • • for testing visual acuity; for determination of refraction, e.g. phoropters [5, 2006.01]

A61B

- 3/032 • • • Devices for presenting test symbols or characters, e.g. test chart projectors (A61B 3/036 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 3/036 • • • for testing astigmatism [5, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • • Trial frames; Sets of lenses for use therewith [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • for testing light sensitivity, e.g. adaptation; for testing colour vision [1, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • • for testing binocular or stereoscopic vision, e.g. strabismus [1, 2006.01]
- 3/09 • • for testing accommodation [1, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • Objective types, i.e. instruments for examining the eyes independent of the patients perceptions or reactions [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/103 • • for determining refraction, e.g. refractometers, skiascopes [5, 2006.01]
- 3/107 • • for determining the shape or measuring the curvature of the cornea [5, 2006.01]
- 3/11 • • for measuring interpupillary distance or diameter of pupils [5, 2006.01]
- 3/113 • • for determining or recording eye movement [5, 2006.01]
- 3/117 • • for examining the anterior chamber or the anterior chamber angle, e.g. gonioscopes [5, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • • for looking at the eye fundus, e.g. ophthalmoscopes (A61B 3/13 takes precedence) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/125 • • • with contact lenses [5, 2006.01]
- 3/13 • • Ophthalmic microscopes [5, 2006.01]
- 3/135 • • • Slit-lamp microscopes [5, 2006.01]
- 3/14 • • Arrangements specially adapted for eye photography [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/15 • • • with means for aligning, spacing or blocking spurious reflection [5, 2006.01]
- 3/16 • • for measuring intraocular pressure, e.g. tonometers [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/18 • Arrangement of plural eye-testing or -examining apparatus [5, 2006.01]

- 5/00 Measuring for diagnostic purposes** (radiation diagnosis A61B 6/00; diagnosis by ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/00); **Identification of persons** [1, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
 - "measuring" covers also detecting or recording.
- 5/01 • Measuring temperature of body parts (clinical contact thermometers G01K 13/20) [7, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • Measuring pulse, heart rate, blood pressure or blood flow; Combined pulse/heart-rate/blood pressure determination; Evaluating a cardiovascular condition not otherwise provided for, e.g. using combinations of techniques provided for in this group with electrocardiography; Heart catheters for measuring blood pressure [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/0205 • • Simultaneously evaluating both cardiovascular conditions and different types of body conditions, e.g. heart and respiratory condition [5, 2006.01]
- 5/021 • • Measuring pressure in heart or blood vessels (A61B 5/0205 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0215 • • • by means inserted into the body [5, 2006.01]
- 5/022 • • • by applying pressure to close blood vessels, e.g. against the skin; Ophthalmdynamometers [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0225 • • • • the pressure being controlled by electric signals, e.g. derived from Korotkoff sounds [5, 2006.01]
- 5/023 • • • • the pressure transducers comprising a liquid column [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0235 • • • • Valves specially adapted therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 5/024 • • Measuring pulse rate or heart rate (A61B 5/0205, A61B 5/021 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0245 • • • using sensing means generating electric signals [5, 2006.01]
- 5/025 • • • • within occluders, e.g. responsive to Korotkoff sounds [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0255 • • • Recording instruments specially adapted therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 5/026 • • Measuring blood flow [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0265 • • • using electromagnetic means, e.g. electromagnetic flow meter [5, 2006.01]
- 5/027 • • • • using catheters [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0275 • • • using tracers, e.g. dye dilution [5, 2006.01]
- 5/028 • • • • by thermo-dilution [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0285 • • • Measuring phase velocity of blood waves [5, 2006.01]
- 5/029 • • • Measuring blood output from the heart, e.g. minute volume [5, 2006.01]
- 5/0295 • • • using plethysmography, i.e. measuring the variations in the volume of a body part as modified by the circulation of blood therethrough, e.g. impedance plethysmography [5, 2006.01]
- 5/03 • Measuring fluid pressure within the body other than blood pressure, e.g. cerebral pressure [4, 2006.01]
- 5/05 • *Detecting, measuring or recording for diagnosis by means of electric currents or magnetic fields; Measuring using microwaves or radio waves (impedance plethysmography A61B 5/0295; measuring movement of the entire body or parts thereof A61B 5/11; detecting, measuring or recording bioelectric or biomagnetic signals of the body or parts thereof A61B 5/24) [1, 5, 2006.01, 2021.01]*
- 5/0507 • • *using microwaves or terahertz waves [2021.01]*
- 5/0515 • • *Magnetic particle imaging [2021.01]*
- 5/0522 • • *Magnetic induction tomography [2021.01]*
- 5/053 • • *Measuring electrical impedance or conductance of a portion of the body [7, 2006.01, 2021.01]*
- 5/0531 • • • *Measuring skin impedance [2021.01]*
- 5/0532 • • • *specially adapted for acupuncture or moxibustion [2021.01]*
- 5/0533 • • • • *Measuring galvanic skin response [2021.01]*
- 5/0534 • • • *for testing vitality of teeth [2021.01]*
- 5/0535 • • • *Impedance plethysmography (for measuring blood flow A61B 5/0295) [2021.01]*
- 5/0536 • • • *Impedance imaging, e.g. by tomography [2021.01]*
- 5/0537 • • • *Measuring body composition by impedance, e.g. tissue hydration or fat content [2021.01]*
- 5/0538 • • • *invasively, e.g. using a catheter [2021.01]*
- 5/055 • • involving electronic [EMR] or nuclear [NMR] magnetic resonance, e.g. magnetic resonance imaging [5, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • Devices, other than using radiation, for detecting or locating foreign bodies (for removing same A61B 17/50) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/07 • Endoradiosondes [1, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • Measuring devices for evaluating the respiratory organs (A61B 5/0205 takes precedence) [1, 5, 2006.01]

- 5/083 • • Measuring rate of metabolism by using breath test, e.g. measuring rate of oxygen consumption [5, 2006.01]
- 5/085 • • Measuring impedance of respiratory organs or lung elasticity [5, 2006.01]
- 5/087 • • Measuring breath flow [5, 2006.01]
- 5/09 • • • using an element rotated by the flow [5, 2006.01]
- 5/091 • • Measuring volume of inspired or expired gases, e.g. to determine lung capacity [5, 2006.01]
- 5/093 • • • the gases being exhaled into, or inhaled from, an expandable chamber, e.g. bellows or expandable bag [5, 2006.01]
- 5/095 • • • • within a rigid container, e.g. the boundary being formed by a liquid surface [5, 2006.01]
- 5/097 • • Devices for facilitating collection of breath or for directing breath into or through measuring devices [5, 2006.01]
- 5/103 • Measuring devices for testing the shape, pattern, size or movement of the body or parts thereof, for diagnostic purposes (A61B 5/08 takes precedence; measuring instruments specially adapted for dentistry A61C 19/04) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/107 • • Measuring physical dimensions, e.g. size of the entire body or parts thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 5/11 • • Measuring movement of the entire body or parts thereof, e.g. head or hand tremor or mobility of a limb (for measuring pulse A61B 5/02) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/113 • • • occurring during breathing [5, 2006.01]
- 5/117 • Identification of persons (methods or arrangements for recognising patterns, e.g. fingerprints, G06K 9/00; identification of persons by analysing their voice or speech G10L 17/00) [5, 2006.01, 2016.01]
- 5/1171 • • based on the shapes or appearances of their bodies or parts thereof [2016.01]
- 5/1172 • • • using fingerprinting [2016.01]
- 5/1174 • • • using footprinting [2016.01]
- 5/1178 • • • using dental data [2016.01]
- 5/12 • Audiometering [1, 2006.01]
- 5/145 • Measuring characteristics of blood *in vivo*, e.g. gas concentration, pH-value (measuring of blood pressure or blood flow A61B 5/02; non-radiation detecting or locating of foreign bodies in blood A61B 5/06) [7, 2006.01]
- 5/1455 • • using optical sensors, e.g. spectral photometrical oximeters [2006.01]
- 5/1459 • • • invasive, e.g. introduced into the body by a catheter [2006.01]
- 5/1464 • • • specially adapted for foetal tissue [2006.01]
- 5/1468 • • • using chemical or electrochemical methods, e.g. by polarographic means [2006.01]
- 5/1473 • • • invasive, e.g. introduced into the body by a catheter [2006.01]
- 5/1477 • • • non-invasive [2006.01]
- 5/1482 • • • specially adapted for foetal tissue [2006.01]
- 5/1486 • • • using enzyme electrodes, e.g. with immobilised oxidase [2006.01]
- 5/1491 • • Heated applicators [2006.01]
- 5/1495 • • Calibrating or testing *in vivo* probes [2006.01]
- 5/15 • Devices for taking samples of blood (hypodermic syringes A61M 5/178) [7, 2006.01]
- 5/151 • • specially adapted for taking samples of capillary blood, e.g. by lancets [2006.01]
- 5/153 • • specially adapted for taking samples of venous or arterial blood, e.g. by syringes [2006.01]
- 5/154 • • • using pre-evacuated means [2006.01]
- 5/155 • • specially adapted for continuous or multiple sampling, e.g. at predetermined intervals [7, 2006.01]
- 5/157 • • characterised by integrated means for measuring characteristics of blood [2006.01]
- 5/16 • Devices for psychotechnics (using teaching or educational appliances G09B 1/00-G09B 7/00); Testing reaction times [1, 2006.01]
- 5/18 • • • for vehicle drivers [1, 2006.01]
- 5/20 • Measuring urological functions [4, 2006.01]
- 5/22 • Ergometry; Measuring muscular strength or the force of a muscular blow [4, 2006.01]
- 5/24 • *Detecting, measuring or recording bioelectric or biomagnetic signals of the body or parts thereof* [2021.01]
- 5/242 • • *Detecting biomagnetic fields, e.g. magnetic fields produced by bioelectric currents* [2021.01]
- 5/243 • • • *specially adapted for magnetocardiographic [MCG] signals* [2021.01]
- 5/245 • • • *specially adapted for magnetoencephalographic [MEG] signals* [2021.01]
- 5/246 • • • • *using evoked responses* [2021.01]
- 5/248 • • • *specially adapted for magnetoneurographic [MNG] signals, e.g. magnetospinographic [MSG] signals* [2021.01]
- 5/25 • • *Bioelectric electrodes therefor* [2021.01]
- 5/251 • • • *Means for maintaining electrode contact with the body* [2021.01]
- 5/252 • • • • *by suction* [2021.01]
- 5/254 • • • • *by clips* [2021.01]
- 5/256 • • • • *Wearable electrodes, e.g. having straps or bands* [2021.01]
- 5/257 • • • • *using adhesive means, e.g. adhesive pads or tapes* [2021.01]
- 5/259 • • • • • *using conductive adhesive means, e.g. gels* [2021.01]
- 5/26 • • • *maintaining contact between the body and the electrodes by the action of the subjects, e.g. by placing the body on the electrodes or by grasping the electrodes* [2021.01]
- 5/262 • • • *Needle electrodes* [2021.01]
- 5/263 • • • *characterised by the electrode materials* [2021.01]
- 5/265 • • • • *containing silver or silver chloride* [2021.01]
- 5/266 • • • • *containing electrolytes, conductive gels or pastes* [2021.01]
- 5/268 • • • • *containing conductive polymers, e.g. PEDOT:PSS polymers* [2021.01]
- 5/27 • • • • *Conductive fabrics or textiles* [2021.01]
- 5/271 • • • *Arrangements of electrodes with cords, cables or leads, e.g. single leads or patient cord assemblies* [2021.01]
- 5/273 • • • • *Connection of cords, cables or leads to electrodes* [2021.01]
- 5/274 • • • • • *using snap or button fasteners* [2021.01]
- 5/276 • • • • *Protection against electrode failure* [2021.01]
- 5/277 • • • • *Capacitive electrodes* [2021.01]
- 5/279 • • • • *specially adapted for particular uses* [2021.01]
- 5/28 • • • • *for electrocardiography [ECG]* [2021.01]

- 5/282 • • • • • Holders for multiple electrodes (for introduction into the body A61B 5/287) [2021.01]
- 5/283 • • • • • Invasive [2021.01]
- 5/285 • • • • • Endotracheal, oesophageal or gastric probes [2021.01]
- 5/287 • • • • • Holders for multiple electrodes, e.g. electrode catheters for electrophysiological study [EPS] [2021.01]
- 5/288 • • • • • for foetal cardiography, e.g. scalp electrodes [2021.01]
- 5/29 • • • • • for permanent or long-term implantation [2021.01]
- 5/291 • • • • • for electroencephalography [EEG] [2021.01]
- 5/293 • • • • • Invasive [2021.01]
- 5/294 • • • • • for nerve conduction study [NCS] [2021.01]
- 5/296 • • • • • for electromyography [EMG] [2021.01]
- 5/297 • • • • • for electrooculography [EOG]; for electroretinography [ERG] [2021.01]
- 5/30 • • • • • Input circuits therefor [2021.01]
- 5/301 • • • • • providing electrical separation, e.g. by using isolating transformers or optocouplers [2021.01]
- 5/302 • • • • • for capacitive or ionised electrodes, e.g. metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistors [MOSFET] [2021.01]
- 5/304 • • • • • Switching circuits [2021.01]
- 5/305 • • • • • Common mode rejection [2021.01]
- 5/307 • • • • • specially adapted for particular uses [2021.01]
- 5/308 • • • • • for electrocardiography [ECG] [2021.01]
- 5/31 • • • • • for electroencephalography [EEG] [2021.01]
- 5/311 • • • • • for nerve conduction study [NCS] [2021.01]
- 5/313 • • • • • for electromyography [EMG] [2021.01]
- 5/315 • • • • • for electrooculography [EOG]; for electroretinography [ERG] [2021.01]
- 5/316 • • • • • Modalities, i.e. specific diagnostic methods [2021.01]
- 5/318 • • • • • Heart-related electrical modalities, e.g. electrocardiography [ECG] [2021.01]
- 5/319 • • • • • Circuits for simulating ECG signals [2021.01]
- 5/321 • • • • • Accessories or supplementary instruments therefor, e.g. cord hangers [2021.01]
- 5/322 • • • • • Physical templates or devices for measuring ECG waveforms, e.g. electrocardiograph rulers or calipers (by template matching A61B 5/35) [2021.01]
- 5/324 • • • • • Means for providing electrolytes, e.g. syringes [2021.01]
- 5/325 • • • • • Preparing electrode sites, e.g. by abrasion [2021.01]
- 5/327 • • • • • Generation of artificial ECG signals based on measured signals, e.g. to compensate for missing leads [2021.01]
- 5/329 • • • • • Load diagnosis, e.g. cardiac stress tests [2021.01]
- 5/33 • • • • • specially adapted for cooperation with other devices [2021.01]
- 5/332 • • • • • Portable devices specially adapted therefor [2021.01]
- 5/333 • • • • • Recording apparatus specially adapted therefor [2021.01]
- 5/335 • • • • • using integrated circuit memory devices [2021.01]
- 5/336 • • • • • Magnetic recording apparatus [2021.01]
- 5/338 • • • • • Recording by printing on paper [2021.01]
- 5/339 • • • • • Displays specially adapted therefor [2021.01]
- 5/341 • • • • • Vectorcardiography [VCG] [2021.01]
- 5/343 • • • • • Potential distribution indication [2021.01]
- 5/344 • • • • • Foetal cardiography [2021.01]
- 5/346 • • • • • Analysis of electrocardiograms [2021.01]
- 5/347 • • • • • Detecting the frequency distribution of signals [2021.01]
- 5/349 • • • • • Detecting specific parameters of the electrocardiograph cycle [2021.01]
- 5/35 • • • • • by template matching [2021.01]
- 5/352 • • • • • Detecting R peaks, e.g. for synchronising diagnostic apparatus; Estimating R-R interval [2021.01]
- 5/353 • • • • • Detecting P-waves [2021.01]
- 5/355 • • • • • Detecting T-waves [2021.01]
- 5/357 • • • • • Detecting U-waves [2021.01]
- 5/358 • • • • • Detecting ST segments [2021.01]
- 5/36 • • • • • Detecting PQ interval, PR interval or QT interval [2021.01]
- 5/361 • • • • • Detecting fibrillation [2021.01]
- 5/363 • • • • • Detecting tachycardia or bradycardia [2021.01]
- 5/364 • • • • • Detecting abnormal ECG interval, e.g. extrasystoles or ectopic heartbeats [2021.01]
- 5/366 • • • • • Detecting abnormal QRS complex, e.g. widening [2021.01]
- 5/367 • • • • • Electrophysiological study [EPS], e.g. electrical activation mapping or electro-anatomical mapping [2021.01]
- 5/369 • • • • • Electroencephalography [EEG] (devices for psychotechnics A61B 5/16) [2021.01]
- 5/37 • • • • • Intracranial electroencephalography [IC-EEG], e.g. electrocorticography [ECoG] [2021.01]
- 5/372 • • • • • Analysis of electroencephalograms [2021.01]
- 5/374 • • • • • Detecting the frequency distribution of signals, e.g. detecting delta, theta, alpha, beta or gamma waves [2021.01]
- 5/375 • • • • • using biofeedback [2021.01]
- 5/377 • • • • • using evoked responses [2021.01]
- 5/378 • • • • • Visual stimuli [2021.01]
- 5/38 • • • • • Acoustic or auditory stimuli [2021.01]
- 5/381 • • • • • Olfactory or gustatory stimuli [2021.01]
- 5/383 • • • • • Somatosensory stimuli, e.g. electric stimulation [2021.01]
- 5/384 • • • • • Recording apparatus or displays specially adapted therefor [2021.01]
- 5/386 • • • • • Accessories or supplementary instruments therefor [2021.01]
- 5/388 • • • • • Nerve conduction study, e.g. detecting action potential of peripheral nerves [2021.01]
- 5/389 • • • • • Electromyography [EMG] [2021.01]
- 5/391 • • • • • of genito-urinary organs [2021.01]
- 5/392 • • • • • Detecting gastrointestinal contractions [2021.01]
- 5/394 • • • • • specially adapted for electroglottography or electropalatography [2021.01]

- 5/395 • • • • Details of stimulation, e.g. nerve stimulation to elicit EMG response [2021.01]
- 5/397 • • • • Analysis of electromyograms [2021.01]
- 5/398 • • • • Electrooculography [EOG], e.g. detecting nystagmus; Electroretinography [ERG] [2021.01]
- 6/00 Apparatus for radiation diagnosis, e.g. combined with radiation therapy equipment** (instruments measuring radiation intensity for application in the field of nuclear medicine, e.g. *in vivo* counting, G01T 1/161; apparatus for taking X-ray photographs G03B 42/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 6/02 • Devices for diagnosis sequentially in different planes; Stereoscopic radiation diagnosis [1, 2006.01]
- 6/03 • • Computerised tomographs (echo-tomography A61B 8/14) [4, 2006.01]
- 6/04 • Positioning of patients; Tilttable beds or the like (operating tables A61G 13/00; operating chairs A61G 15/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 6/06 • Diaphragms [1, 2006.01]
- 6/08 • Auxiliary means for directing the radiation beam to a particular spot, e.g. using light beams [1, 2006.01]
- 6/10 • Application or adaptation of safety means [1, 2006.01]
- 6/12 • Devices for detecting or locating foreign bodies (A61B 6/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 6/14 • Applications or adaptations for dentistry [1, 2006.01]
- 7/00 Instruments for auscultation [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • Stethoscopes [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • • Electric stethoscopes (microphones, acoustic transducers therefor H04R) [1, 2006.01]
- 8/00 Diagnosis using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves [4, 2006.01]**
- 8/02 • Measuring pulse or heart rate [4, 2006.01]
- 8/04 • Measuring blood pressure [4, 2006.01]
- 8/06 • Measuring blood flow [4, 2006.01]
- 8/08 • Detecting organic movements or changes, e.g. tumours, cysts, swellings (A61B 8/02-A61B 8/06 take precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 8/10 • Eye inspection [4, 2006.01]
- 8/12 • in body cavities or body tracts, e.g. by using catheters (catheters *per se* A61M 25/00) [4, 2006.01]
- 8/13 • Tomography (A61B 8/10, A61B 8/12 take precedence; tomography for radiation diagnosis A61B 6/02) [5, 2006.01]
- 8/14 • • Echo-tomography [4, 2006.01]
- 8/15 • • Transmission-tomography [5, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Instruments for examination by percussion; Pleximeters [1, 2006.01]**
- 10/00 Other methods or instruments for diagnosis, e.g. for vaccination diagnosis; Sex determination; Ovulation-period determination; Throat striking implements [1, 4, 2006.01]**
- Note(s) [5]**
- Attention is drawn to group A61F 13/15 which provides for swabs.
- 10/02 • Instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy (devices for taking samples of blood A61B 5/15) [2006.01]
- 10/04 • • Endoscopic instruments [2006.01]
- 10/06 • • Biopsy forceps [2006.01]
- 13/00 Instruments for depressing the tongue** (combined with illuminating and viewing instruments A61B 1/24; combined with saliva removers A61C 17/10) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 16/00 Devices specially adapted for vivisection or autopsy** (similar devices for medical purposes, *see* the relevant groups for such devices) [1, 2006.01]
- Surgery**
- 17/00 Surgical instruments, devices or methods, e.g. tourniquets** (A61B 18/00 takes precedence; contraceptive devices, pessaries, or applicators therefor A61F 6/00; eye surgery A61F 9/007; ear surgery A61F 11/00) [1, 3, 7, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [2006.01]**
- When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group A61B 17/94 if the endoscopic features of the surgical instrument are of interest.
- 17/02 • for holding wounds open; Tractors [1, 2006.01]
- 17/03 • for closing wounds, or holding wounds closed, e.g. surgical staples; Accessories for use therewith [6, 2006.01]
-
- 17/04 • • for suturing wounds; Holders or packages for needles or suture materials [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • • • Needles; Holders or packages for needles or suture materials (puncturing needles A61B 17/34; hypodermic needles A61M 5/32) [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 17/062 • • • Needle manipulators [6, 2006.01]
- 17/064 • • Surgical staples [5, 2006.01]
- 17/068 • • Surgical staplers (for performing anastomosis A61B 17/115) [5, 2006.01]
- 17/072 • • • for applying a row of staples in a single action [5, 2006.01]
- 17/076 • • for removing surgical staples [5, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • • Wound clamps [1, 2006.01]
- 17/10 • • for applying or removing wound clamps; Wound clamp magazines [1, 2006.01]
- 17/11 • • for performing anastomosis; Buttons for anastomosis [1, 2006.01]
- 17/115 • • • Staplers [5, 2006.01]
- 17/12 • for ligaturing or otherwise compressing tubular parts of the body, e.g. blood vessels or umbilical cord [1, 2006.01]
- 17/122 • • Clamps or clips [6, 2006.01]
- 17/125 • • • combined with cutting implements [6, 2006.01]
- 17/128 • • for applying or removing clamps or clips [6, 2006.01]
- 17/132 • • Tourniquets [6, 2006.01]
- 17/135 • • • inflatable [6, 2006.01]
- 17/138 • • combined with cutting implements (A61B 17/125 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 17/14 • Surgical saws (tooth saws A61C 3/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 17/15 • • Guides therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 17/16 • Osteoclasts; Drills or chisels for bones; Trepanns [1, 2006.01]
- 17/17 • • Guides for drills [6, 2006.01]
- 17/20 • for vaccinating or cleaning the skin previous to the vaccination (apparatus for injections A61M 3/00, A61M 5/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 17/22 • Implements for squeezing-off ulcers or the like on inner organs of the body; Implements for scraping-out cavities of body organs, e.g. bones; for invasive removal or destruction of calculus using mechanical vibrations; for removing obstructions in blood vessels, not otherwise provided for [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 17/221 • • Calculus gripping devices in the form of loops or baskets [2006.01]
- 17/225 • for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy [ESWL], e.g. by using ultrasonic waves [6, 2006.01]
- 17/24 • for use in the oral cavity, larynx, bronchial passages or nose (for medical inspection of cavities or tubes in the body A61B 1/00); Tongue scrapers [1, 2006.01]
- 17/26 • • Tonsillotomes, with or without means for stopping bleeding [1, 2006.01]
- 17/28 • Surgical forceps (biopsy forceps A61B 10/06; obstetrical forceps A61B 17/44) [1, 2006.01]
- 17/285 • • combined with cutting implements [2006.01]
- 17/29 • • Forceps for use in minimally invasive surgery [2006.01]
- 17/295 • • • combined with cutting implements [2006.01]
- 17/30 • Surgical pincettes (wound clamps A61B 17/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 17/32 • Surgical cutting instruments (implements for ligaturing and cutting A61B 17/125, A61B 17/138) [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 17/3201 • • Scissors (for biopsy A61B 10/02) [2006.01]
- 17/3203 • • Fluid jet cutting instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3205 • • Excision instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3207 • • • Atherectomy devices [2006.01]
- 17/3209 • • Incision instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3211 • • • Surgical scalpels or knives; Accessories therefor [2006.01]
- 17/3213 • • • • with detachable blades [2006.01]
- 17/3215 • • • • Packages or dispensers, e.g. for scalpel blades [2006.01]
- 17/3217 • • • • Devices for removing or collecting used scalpel blades [2006.01]
- 17/322 • • Skin grafting apparatus [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 17/326 • • Circumcision apparatus [1, 2006.01]
- 17/34 • Trocars; Puncturing needles [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 17/42 • Gynaecological or obstetrical instruments or methods [1, 2006.01]
- 17/425 • • for reproduction or fertilisation [5, 2006.01]
- 17/43 • • • for artificial insemination [5, 2006.01]
- 17/435 • • • for embryo transplantation [5, 2006.01]
- 17/44 • • Obstetrical forceps [1, 2006.01]
- 17/46 • • Embryotomes [1, 2006.01]
- 17/48 • • Bags for midwives [1, 2006.01]
- 17/50 • Instruments, other than pincettes or toothpicks, for removing foreign bodies from the human body [1, 2006.01]
- 17/52 • • Magnets [1, 2006.01]
- 17/54 • Chiropractors' instruments [1, 2006.01]
- 17/56 • Surgical instruments or methods for treatment of bones or joints; Devices specially adapted therefor [4, 2006.01]
- 17/58 • • for osteosynthesis, e.g. bone plates, screws or the like (A61B 17/14, A61B 17/16 take precedence) [4, 6, 2006.01]
- 17/60 • • • for external osteosynthesis, e.g. distractors or contractors [4, 2006.01]
- 17/62 • • • • Ring frames, i.e. devices extending around the bones to be positioned (A61B 17/66 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 17/64 • • • • Devices extending alongside the bones to be positioned (A61B 17/66 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 17/66 • • • • Compression or distraction mechanisms [6, 2006.01]
- 17/68 • • • Internal fixation devices [6, 2006.01]
- 17/70 • • • • Spinal positioners or stabilisers [6, 2006.01]
- 17/72 • • • • Intramedullary devices [6, 2006.01]
- 17/74 • • • • Devices for the head of the femur [6, 2006.01]
- 17/76 • • • • • fixed by screws [6, 2006.01]
- 17/78 • • • • • fixed by nails, pins or the like [6, 2006.01]
- 17/80 • • • • Cortical plates [6, 2006.01]
- 17/82 • • • • for bone cerclage [6, 2006.01]
- 17/84 • • • • Fasteners therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 17/86 • • • • • Pins or screws [6, 2006.01]
- 17/88 • • • Methods or means for implanting or extracting internal fixation devices [6, 2006.01]
- 17/90 • • • • Guides therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 17/92 • • • • Impactors or extractors, e.g. for removing intramedullary devices [6, 2006.01]
- 17/94 • Endoscopic surgical instruments (endoscopic instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy A61B 10/04) [2006.01]
- 18/00 Surgical instruments, devices or methods for transferring non-mechanical forms of energy to or from the body** (eye surgery A61F 9/007; ear surgery A61F 11/00) [7, 2006.01]
- 18/02 • by cooling, e.g. cryogenic techniques (devices for cooling specific reflex points of the body within cell-life limits A61H 39/06) [7, 2006.01]
- 18/04 • by heating (by applying electromagnetic radiation A61B 18/18; devices for heating specific reflex points of the body within cell-life limits A61H 39/06) [7, 2006.01]
- 18/06 • • caused by chemical reaction [7, 2006.01]
- 18/08 • • by means of electrically-heated probes [7, 2006.01]
- 18/10 • • • Power sources therefor [7, 2006.01]
- 18/12 • • by passing a current through the tissue to be heated, e.g. high-frequency current [7, 2006.01]
- 18/14 • • • Probes or electrodes therefor [7, 2006.01]
- 18/16 • • • • Indifferent or passive electrodes for grounding [7, 2006.01]
- 18/18 • by applying electromagnetic radiation, e.g. microwaves (radiation therapy A61N 5/00) [7, 2006.01]
- 18/20 • • using laser [7, 2006.01]
- 18/22 • • • the beam being directed along or through a flexible conduit, e.g. an optical fibre; Hand-pieces therefor [7, 2006.01]
- 18/24 • • • • with a catheter (A61B 18/26, A61B 18/28 take precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 18/26 • • • • for producing a shock wave, e.g. laser lithotripsy [7, 2006.01]
- 18/28 • • • • for heating a thermal probe or absorber [7, 2006.01]
- 34/00 Computer-aided surgery; Manipulators or robots specially adapted for use in surgery [2016.01]**
- 34/10 • Computer-aided planning, simulation or modelling of surgical operations [2016.01]
- 34/20 • Surgical navigation systems; Devices for tracking or guiding surgical instruments, e.g. for frameless stereotaxis [2016.01]

- 34/30 • Surgical robots [2016.01]
- 34/32 • • operating autonomously [2016.01]
- 34/35 • • for telesurgery [2016.01]
- 34/37 • • Master-slave robots (A61B 34/35 takes precedence) [2016.01]
- 42/00 Surgical gloves; Finger-stalls specially adapted for surgery; Devices for handling or treatment thereof [2016.01]**
- 42/10 • Surgical gloves [2016.01]
- 42/20 • Finger-stalls specially adapted for surgery [2016.01]
- 42/30 • Devices for detecting perforations, leaks or tears [2016.01]
- 42/40 • Packages or dispensers [2016.01]
- 42/50 • Devices for putting-on or removing [2016.01]
- 42/60 • Devices for cleaning, washing, drying or powdering [2016.01]
- 46/00 Surgical drapes [2016.01]**
- 46/10 • specially adapted for instruments [2016.01]
- 46/13 • • the drapes entering the patient's body [2016.01]
- 46/17 • • • closed at the distal end [2016.01]
- 46/20 • specially adapted for patients [2016.01]
- 46/23 • • with means to retain or hold surgical implements [2016.01]
- 46/27 • • tubular, e.g. for arms or legs (A61B 46/13 takes precedence) [2016.01]
- 50/00 Containers, covers, furniture or holders specially adapted for surgical or diagnostic appliances or instruments, e.g. sterile covers (drapes specially adapted for instruments A61B 46/10) [2016.01]**
- 50/10 • Furniture specially adapted for surgical or diagnostic appliances or instruments [2016.01]
- 50/13 • • Trolleys [2016.01]
- 50/15 • • Mayo stands; Tables [2016.01]
- 50/18 • • Cupboards; Drawers therefor [2016.01]
- 50/20 • Holders specially adapted for surgical or diagnostic appliances or instruments (drapes with means to hold surgical instruments A61B 46/23; for catheters A61M 25/02) [2016.01]
- 50/22 • • Racks [2016.01]
- 50/24 • • Stands (Mayo stands A61B 50/15) [2016.01]
- 50/26 • • • floor-based [2016.01]
- 50/28 • • • suspended from the ceiling [2016.01]
- 50/30 • Containers specially adapted for packaging, protecting, dispensing, collecting or disposing of surgical or diagnostic appliances or instruments (for wound clamps A61B 17/10; for ligaturing clips A61B 17/122; packages or dispensers for surgical gloves or finger-stalls A61B 42/40) [2016.01]
- 50/31 • • Carrying cases or bags, e.g. doctors' bags [2016.01]
- 50/33 • • Trays [2016.01]
- 50/34 • • Baskets [2016.01]
- 50/36 • • for collecting or disposing of used articles [2016.01]
- 50/37 • • • for absorbent articles, e.g. bandages, garments, swabs or towels [2016.01]
- 50/39 • • • the containers containing antimicrobial, antiviral or disinfectant agents [2016.01]
- 90/00 Instruments, implements or accessories specially adapted for surgery or diagnosis and not covered by any of the groups A61B 1/00-A61B 50/00, e.g. for luxation treatment or for protecting wound edges (protective face masks A41D 13/11; surgeons' or patients' gowns or dresses A41D 13/12; devices for carrying-off, for treatment of, or for carrying-over, body liquids A61M 1/00) [2016.01]**
- 90/10 • for stereotaxic surgery, e.g. frame-based stereotaxis [2016.01]
- 90/11 • • with guides for needles or instruments, e.g. arcuate slides or ball joints [2016.01]
- 90/13 • • • guided by light, e.g. laser pointers [2016.01]
- 90/14 • • Fixators for body parts, e.g. skull clamps; Constructional details of fixators, e.g. pins [2016.01]
- 90/16 • • • Bite blocks [2016.01]
- 90/17 • • • for soft tissue, e.g. breast-holding devices [2016.01]
- 90/18 • • • Retaining sheets, e.g. immobilising masks [2016.01]
- 90/20 • Surgical microscopes characterised by non-optical aspects [2016.01]
- 90/25 • • Supports therefor [2016.01]
- 90/30 • Devices for illuminating a surgical field, the devices having an interrelation with other surgical devices or with a surgical procedure [2016.01]
- 90/35 • • Supports therefor [2016.01]
- 90/40 • Apparatus fixed or close to patients specially adapted for providing an aseptic surgical environment [2016.01]
- 90/50 • Supports for surgical instruments, e.g. articulated arms [2016.01]
- 90/53 • • connected to the surgeon's body, e.g. by a belt [2016.01]
- 90/57 • • Accessory clamps [2016.01]
- 90/60 • Supports for surgeons, e.g. chairs or hand supports (seats for dentists or surgeons associated with dental chairs or operating chairs A61G 15/00) [2016.01]
- 90/70 • Cleaning devices specially adapted for surgical instruments [2016.01]
- 90/80 • Implements for cleaning or washing the skin of surgeons or patients [2016.01]
- 90/90 • Identification means for patients or instruments, e.g. tags [2016.01]
- 90/92 • • coded with colour [2016.01]
- 90/94 • • coded with symbols, e.g. text [2016.01]
- 90/96 • • • using barcodes [2016.01]
- 90/98 • • using electromagnetic means, e.g. transponders [2016.01]
- A61C DENTISTRY; APPARATUS OR METHODS FOR ORAL OR DENTAL HYGIENE (non-driven toothbrushes A46B; preparations for dentistry A61K 6/00; preparations for cleaning the teeth or mouth A61K 8/00, A61Q 11/00)**

Subclass index

DENTAL SURGERY.....	1/00-8/00
DENTAL PROSTHETICS; ARTIFICIAL TEETH.....	9/00-13/00
DEVICES FOR CLEANING OF TEETH OR MOUTH.....	15/00, 17/00

Dental surgery

- 1/00 Dental machines for boring or cutting [1, 2006.01]**
- 1/02 • characterised by the drive of the dental tools [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • • with treadle or manual drive [1, 2006.01]
- 1/05 • • with turbine drive [1, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • • with electric drive [1, 2006.01]
- 1/07 • • with vibratory drive, e.g. ultrasonic [1, 2006.01]
- 1/08 • Machine parts specially adapted for dentistry [1, 2006.01]
- 1/10 • • Straight hand-pieces [1, 2006.01]
- 1/12 • • Angle hand-pieces [1, 2006.01]
- 1/14 • • Tool-holders [1, 2006.01]
- 1/16 • • Protecting caps for hand-pieces or angle-pieces [1, 2006.01]
- 1/18 • • Flexible shafts; Clutches or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 3/00 Dental tools or instruments** (implanting tools A61C 8/00; tools for fastening artificial teeth A61C 13/12; visual inspection devices, e.g. dental mirrors, A61B 1/24) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • Tooth drilling or cutting instruments; Instruments acting like a sandblast machine [1, 2006.01]
- 3/025 • • Instruments acting like a sandblast machine, e.g. for cleaning, polishing or cutting teeth [5, 2006.01]
- 3/03 • • Instruments operated by vibration [1, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • Supports for holding tooth drills in order of use [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • Tooth grinding or polishing discs; Holders therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • Tooth pluggers or hammers [1, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • Tooth pincettes or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • Tooth saws [1, 2006.01]
- 3/14 • Dentists' forceps or the like for extracting teeth [1, 2006.01]
- 3/16 • Dentists' forceps for removing crowns [1, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Filling or capping teeth [1, 2006.01, 2017.01]**
- 5/20 • Repairing attrition damage, e.g. facets [2017.01]
- 5/30 • Securing inlays, onlays or crowns [2017.01]
- 5/35 • • Pins; Mounting tools or dispensers therefor [2017.01]
- 5/40 • Implements for surgical treatment of the roots or nerves of the teeth; Nerve needles; Methods or instruments for medication of the roots [2017.01]
- 5/42 • • Files for root canals; Handgrips or guiding means therefor [2017.01]
- 5/44 • • Means for controlling working depth, e.g. supports or boxes with depth-gauging means, stop positioners or files with adjustably-mounted handles [2017.01]
- 5/46 • • Nerve extractors, e.g. needles; Means for removing broken parts of endodontic instruments [2017.01]
- 5/48 • • Means for preventing loss of endodontic instruments during treatment [2017.01]
- 5/50 • Implements for filling root canals; Methods or instruments for medication of tooth nerve channels [2017.01]
- 5/55 • • with heating means, e.g. for heating gutta percha [2017.01]
- 5/60 • Devices specially adapted for pressing or mixing capping or filling materials, e.g. amalgam presses [2017.01]
- 5/62 • • Applicators, e.g. syringes or guns [2017.01]
- 5/64 • • • for multi-component compositions [2017.01]
- 5/66 • • Capsules for filling material [2017.01]
- 5/68 • • Mixing dental material components for immediate application to a site to be restored, e.g. a tooth cavity [2017.01]
- 5/70 • Tooth crowns; Making thereof [2017.01]
- 5/73 • • Composite crowns [2017.01]
- 5/77 • • Methods or devices for making crowns [2017.01]
- 5/80 • Dental aids fixed to teeth during treatment, e.g. tooth clamps [2017.01]
- 5/82 • • Dams; Holders or clamps therefor [2017.01]
- 5/85 • • Filling bands, e.g. matrix bands; Manipulating tools therefor [2017.01]
- 5/88 • • Wedges [2017.01]
- 5/90 • Oral protectors for use during treatment, e.g. lip or mouth protectors (A61C 5/82 takes precedence) [2017.01]
- 7/00 Orthodontics, i.e. obtaining or maintaining the desired position of teeth, e.g. by straightening, evening, regulating, separating, or by correcting malocclusions [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • Tools for manipulating or working with an orthodontic appliance [5, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • • plier type [5, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • Extra-oral force transmitting means, i.e. means worn externally of the mouth and placing a member in the mouth under tension [5, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • Mouthpiece-type retainers [5, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • Devices having means to apply outwardly directed force, e.g. expanders [5, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • Brackets; Arch wires; Combinations thereof; Accessories therefor (A61C 7/10 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 7/14 • • Brackets (A61C 7/28 takes precedence); Fixing brackets to teeth [5, 2006.01]
- 7/16 • • • specially adapted to be cemented to teeth [5, 2006.01]
- 7/18 • • • specially adapted to be fixed to teeth with a band; Bands therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 7/20 • • Arch wires (A61C 7/28 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 7/22 • • • Tension adjusting means [5, 2006.01]
- 7/24 • • • Arch wire-enclosing guides [5, 2006.01]
- 7/26 • • • Arch wire attachments [5, 2006.01]
- 7/28 • • Securing arch wire to bracket [5, 2006.01]
- 7/30 • • • by resilient means (A61C 7/34 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 7/32 • • • using ligature wires [5, 2006.01]
- 7/34 • • • using lock pins [5, 2006.01]
- 7/36 • Devices acting between upper and lower teeth [5, 2006.01]

- 8/00 Means to be fixed to the jaw-bone for consolidating natural teeth or for fixing dental prostheses thereon; Dental implants; Implanting tools** (fastening of peg-teeth in the mouth A61C 13/30) [2, 2006.01]
- 8/02 • Means for transfixation of natural teeth [4, 2006.01]

Dental prosthetics; Artificial teeth [3]

- 9/00 Impression methods specially adapted for dental prosthetics; Impression cups therefor [1, 3, 2006.01]**
- 11/00 Dental articulators, i.e. for simulating movement of the temporo-mandibular joints; Articulation forms or mouldings [1, 2006.01]**
- 11/02 • characterised by the arrangement, location or type of the hinge means [5, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • • resiliently biased [5, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • with incisal guide [5, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • with means to secure dental casts to articulator [5, 2006.01]
- 13/00 Dental prostheses; Making same** (tooth crowns for capping teeth A61C 5/70; dental implants A61C 8/00) [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 13/003 • Prostheses without bases, e.g. dental bridges (fastening prostheses in the mouth A61C 13/225); Making same (artificial teeth A61C 13/08) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/007 • Prostheses with bases, e.g. palates or plates; Making same [6, 2006.01]
- 13/01 • • Bases [4, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • • • made by galvanoplastic methods; Surface treatment; Enamelling; Perfuming; Making antiseptic [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 13/03 • • • of metal with a ceramic layer [6, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • • made by punching [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 13/07 • • Linings or cushions therefor (characterised by means to improve suction A61C 13/24) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • Artificial teeth; Making same [1, 2006.01]
- 13/083 • • Porcelain or ceramic teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/087 • • Artificial resin teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/09 • • Multilayer teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/093 • • characterised by a shape which improves retention [4, 2006.01]
- 13/097 • • characterised by occlusal profiles [4, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • Fastening of artificial teeth to artificial base material, e.g. to palates or to adjacent artificial tooth (A61C 13/093 takes precedence; fastening prostheses in the mouth A61C 13/225) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/103 • • connected to base material by additional connecting member, e.g. knob or bar [6, 2006.01]
- 13/105 • • • with the connecting member embedded in base material [6, 2006.01]
- 13/107 • Prostheses for temporary restoration; Vestibular masks [4, 2006.01]
- 13/113 • Modular prostheses, e.g. using prefabricated bases or having prefabricated sets of teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • Tools for fastening artificial teeth; Holders, clamps, or stands for artificial teeth [1, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • Curing devices for plastics prostheses [1, 2006.01]
- 13/15 • • for curing by the action of light [6, 2006.01]
- 13/16 • • Curing flasks; Holders therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 13/18 • • Presses for flasks [1, 2006.01]
- 13/20 • Methods or devices for soldering, casting, moulding or melting [1, 4, 2006.01]

- 13/225 • Fastening prostheses in the mouth (securing tooth crowns in capping teeth A61C 5/30) [4, 2006.01]
- 13/23 • • using adhesive foils or adhesive compositions (A61C 13/263 takes precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 13/235 • • Magnetic fastening (magnetic implants A61C 8/00) [4, 2006.01]
- 13/24 • • Fastening by suction [1, 2006.01]
- 13/25 • • • including valve or air passageway leading from suction area to lingual cavity [6, 2006.01]
- 13/263 • • Screwing pinning or gluing of prostheses to natural teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/265 • • Sliding or snap attachments [4, 2006.01]
- 13/267 • • Clasp fastening [4, 2006.01]
- 13/271 • • resiliently engaging between, or to, natural teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/273 • • Locking prostheses to residual teeth by using rotational or sliding-locks or levers (A61C 13/265, A61C 13/277 take precedence) [4, 6, 2006.01]
- 13/275 • • Securing prostheses by using bridging bars or rails between residual teeth [4, 2006.01]
- 13/277 • • Telescopic anchoring [4, 2006.01]
- 13/28 • • Fastening by spring action between upper and lower parts of prostheses [1, 2006.01]
- 13/30 • • Fastening of peg-teeth in the mouth; Root pins [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 13/32 • • Stress-breakers [4, 2006.01]
- 13/34 • Making or working of models, e.g. preliminary castings, trial dentures; Dowel pins [4, 2006.01]
- 13/36 • • Orienting or positioning of artificial teeth, e.g. determining precise location or attitude therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 13/38 • Tools not otherwise provided for, for use in connection with dental prostheses or the making thereof [6, 2006.01]

Tooth-cleaning or mouth-rinsing devices [3, 5]

- 15/00 Devices for cleaning between the teeth [1, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • Toothpicks [4, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • Dental floss; Floss holders [4, 2006.01]

- 17/00 Devices for cleaning, polishing, rinsing or drying teeth, teeth cavities or prostheses** (instruments acting like a sandblast machine A61C 3/025; tooth polishing discs or holders therefor A61C 3/06; devices for cleaning between the teeth A61C 15/00); **Saliva removers; Dental appliances for receiving spittle [1, 5, 2006.01]**

Note(s) [5]

Cleaning of prostheses using ultrasonic techniques similar to those used for natural teeth is classified in this group. Other ultrasonic cleaning of prostheses is classified in group B08B 3/12.

- 17/02 • Rinsing or air-blowing devices, e.g. using fluid jets (combined with receptacles for spittle A61C 17/14; combined with power-driven cleaning or polishing devices A61C 17/16) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 17/022 • • Air-blowing devices [5, 2006.01]
- 17/024 • • with constant liquid flow [4, 2006.01]
- 17/028 • • with intermittent liquid flow [4, 2006.01]
- 17/032 • • using pressurised tap-water [4, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • Saliva removers; Accessories therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • • Aspiration nozzles [5, 2006.01]

A61C

- 17/10 • • with mouth props, tongue guards, tongue depressors or cheek spreaders [5, 2006.01]
- 17/12 • • Control devices, e.g. for suction [5, 2006.01]
- 17/14 • Dental appliances for receiving spittle, with or without rinsing means therefor, e.g. dental basins, spittoons, cuspidors [5, 2006.01]
- 17/16 • Power-driven cleaning or polishing devices [5, 2006.01]
- 17/18 • • Chiselling scalers (A61C 17/20 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 17/20 • • using ultrasonics [5, 2006.01]
- 17/22 • • with brushes, cushions, cups or the like (brush bodies, e.g. arrangements of the bristles, A46B) [5, 2006.01]
- 17/24 • • • rotating continuously (A61C 17/40 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 17/26 • • • • driven by electric motor [5, 2006.01]
- 17/28 • • • • • with rinsing means [5, 2006.01]
- 17/30 • • • • driven by hydraulic motor, e.g. water motor [5, 2006.01]
- 17/32 • • • reciprocating or oscillating [5, 2006.01]
- 17/34 • • • • driven by electric motor [5, 2006.01]
- 17/36 • • • • • with rinsing means [5, 2006.01]
- 17/38 • • • • driven by hydraulic motor, e.g. water motor [5, 2006.01]
- 17/40 • • • orbiting, e.g. nutating [5, 2006.01]
- 19/00 Dental auxiliary appliances** (dental chairs or accessories therefor, working stands whether or not combined with chairs A61G 15/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/02 • Protective casings, e.g. boxes for instruments; Bags [1, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • Measuring instruments specially adapted for dentistry (radiation diagnosis A61B 6/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/045 • • for recording mandibular movement, e.g. face bows [5, 2006.01]
- 19/05 • • for determining occlusion [5, 2006.01]
- 19/055 • • Paralleling devices [5, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • Implements for therapeutic treatment (radiation therapy A61N 5/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/08 • • combined with anaesthetising implements (dental hypodermic syringes A61M 5/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/10 • Supports for artificial teeth for transport or for comparison of the colour [1, 2006.01]

A61D VETERINARY INSTRUMENTS, IMPLEMENTS, TOOLS, OR METHODS

Note(s)

This subclass covers only instruments, implements, tools, or methods specially adapted for use with animals.

Subclass index

SURGERY AND DENTAL TREATMENT.....	1/00, 5/00
CARE OF ANIMALS.....	7/00-13/00
IMPLEMENTS FOR RESTRAINING, FOR MOUTH-OPENING.....	3/00, 15/00
DEVICES FOR INDICATING TROUBLE DURING LABOUR.....	17/00
INSTRUMENTS OR METHODS FOR REPRODUCTION OR FERTILISATION.....	19/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

-
- 1/00 Surgical instruments for veterinary use [1, 2006.01]**
 - 1/02 • Trocars or cannulas for teats; Vaccination appliances [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/04 • Cropping devices for tails or ears [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/06 • Castrating appliances [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/08 • Veterinary obstetrical instruments or devices (devices for indicating trouble during labour of animals A61D 17/00) [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/10 • Embryotomic instruments [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/12 • Instruments for removing foreign bodies from animals' throats, oesophagus, or stomachs [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/14 • Devices for degassing animals' stomachs [1, 2006.01]
 - 1/16 • Magnets for the stomach (A61D 1/12 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
 - 3/00 Appliances for supporting or fettering animals for operative purposes [1, 2006.01]**
 - 5/00 Instruments for treating animals' teeth [1, 2006.01]**
 - 7/00 Devices or methods for introducing solid, liquid, or gaseous remedies or other materials into or onto the bodies of animals** (for reproduction or fertilisation A61D 19/00) [1, 5, 2006.01]
 - 7/04 • Devices for anaesthetising animals by gases or vapours; Inhaling devices [1, 2006.01]
 - 9/00 Bandages, poultices, compresses specially adapted to veterinary purposes [1, 2006.01]**
 - 9/02 • Prolapsus appliances [1, 2006.01]
 - 11/00 Washing devices or gaseous curative baths specially adapted to veterinary purposes [1, 2006.01]**
 - 13/00 Thermometer holders specially adapted to veterinary purposes [1, 2006.01]**
 - 15/00 Mouth openers [1, 2006.01]**
 - 17/00 Devices for indicating trouble during labour of animals [1, 2006.01]**
 - 19/00 Instruments or methods for reproduction or fertilisation [5, 2006.01]**
 - 19/02 • for artificial insemination [5, 2006.01]
 - 19/04 • for embryo transplantation [5, 2006.01]
 - 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**

A61F FILTERS IMPLANTABLE INTO BLOOD VESSELS; PROSTHESES; DEVICES PROVIDING PATENCY TO, OR PREVENTING COLLAPSING OF, TUBULAR STRUCTURES OF THE BODY, e.g. STENTS; ORTHOPAEDIC, NURSING OR CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES; FOMENTATION; TREATMENT OR PROTECTION OF EYES OR EARS; BANDAGES, DRESSINGS OR ABSORBENT PADS; FIRST-AID KITS (dental prosthetics A61C) [6, 2006.01]

Subclass index

FILTERS IMPLANTABLE INTO BLOOD VESSELS; PROSTHESES OR ACCESSORIES.....2/00, 3/00
 INVALID OPERATED APPARATUS OR DEVICES.....4/00
 ORTHOPAEDICS, NURSING, CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES.....5/00, 6/00
 FOMENTATION, HEATING OR COOLING.....7/00
 TREATMENT OR PROTECTION OF THE EYES OR EARS, SUBSTITUTION BY OTHER SENSES.....9/00, 11/00
 BANDAGES, DRESSINGS OR ABSORBENT PADS; FIRST-AID KITS.....13/00, 15/00, 17/00

Filters; Devices providing patency to tubular structures; Prostheses; Accessories

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>2/00 Filters implantable into blood vessels; Prostheses, i.e. artificial substitutes or replacements for parts of the body; Appliances for connecting them with the body; Devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents (as cosmetic articles, <i>see</i> the relevant subclasses, e.g. wigs or hair pieces A41G 3/00, A41G 5/00, artificial nails A45D 31/00; dental prostheses A61C 13/00; materials for prostheses A61L 27/00; artificial kidneys A61M 1/14; artificial hearts A61M 60/00) [4, 6, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/01 • Filters implantable into blood vessels [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/02 • Prostheses implantable into the body [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/04 • • Hollow or tubular parts of organs, e.g. bladders, tracheae, bronchi or bile ducts (A61F 2/18, A61F 2/20 take precedence; devices, other than stent-grafts, providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents, A61F 2/82; instruments specially adapted for placement or removal of stents or stent-grafts A61F 2/95) [4, 2006.01, 2013.01]</p> <p>2/06 • • • Blood vessels [4, 2006.01, 2013.01]</p> <p>2/07 • • • • Stent-grafts [2013.01]</p> <p>2/08 • • Muscles; Tendons; Ligaments [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/10 • • Hair or skin implants [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/12 • • Mammary prostheses [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/14 • • Eye parts, e.g. lenses, corneal implants (removable contact lenses G02C 7/04); Artificial eyes (making thereof from organic plastic material B29C, B29D 11/02) [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/16 • • • Intraocular lenses [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/18 • • Internal ear or nose parts, e.g. eardrums [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/20 • • Larynxes; Tracheae combined with larynxes or for use therewith (tracheae, bronchi <i>per se</i> A61F 2/04) [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/24 • • Heart valves [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/26 • • Penis implants [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/28 • • Bones (joints A61F 2/30) [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/30 • • Joints [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/32 • • • for the hip [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/34 • • • • Acetabular cups [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/36 • • • • Femoral heads [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/38 • • • for elbows or knees [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/40 • • • for shoulders [4, 2006.01]</p> | <p>2/42 • • • for wrists or ankles; for hands, e.g. fingers; for feet, e.g. toes [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/44 • • • for the spine, e.g. vertebrae, spinal discs [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/46 • • • Special tools for implanting artificial joints (surgical instruments A61B 17/00) [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/48 • • Operating or control means, e.g. from outside the body, control of sphincters [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/50 • Prostheses not implantable in the body [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/52 • • Mammary prostheses (brassières A41C 3/00) [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/54 • • Artificial arms or hands or parts thereof [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/56 • • • adjustable [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/58 • • • Elbows; Wrists [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/60 • • Artificial legs or feet or parts thereof [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/62 • • • adjustable, e.g. adjustable shank, thigh, or tubular skeletal system [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/64 • • • Knee joints [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/66 • • • Feet; Ankle joints [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/68 • • Operating or control means [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/70 • • • electrical [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/72 • • • • Bioelectric control, e.g. myoelectric [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/74 • • • fluid [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/76 • • Means for assembling, fitting, or testing prostheses, e.g. for measuring or balancing [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/78 • • Means for protecting prostheses or for attaching them to the body, e.g. bandages, harnesses, straps, or stockings for the limb stump [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/80 • • • Sockets, e.g. of suction type [4, 2006.01]</p> <p>2/82 • Devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents (stent-grafts for tubular structures of the body other than blood vessels A61F 2/04; stent-grafts for blood vessels A61F 2/07; instruments specially adapted for placement or removal of stents or stent-grafts A61F 2/95; for closing wounds, or holding wounds closed A61B 17/03; dilators A61M 29/00) [2006.01, 2013.01]</p> <p>2/844 • • folded prior to deployment [2013.01]</p> <p>2/848 • • having means for fixation to the vessel wall, e.g. barbs [2013.01]</p> <p>2/852 • • Two or more distinct overlapping stents [2013.01]</p> <p>2/856 • • Single tubular stent with side portal passage [2013.01]</p> |
|---|--|

- 2/86 • • Stents in a form characterised by wire-like elements; Stents in a form characterised by a net-like or mesh-like structure [2006.01, 2013.01]
- 2/88 • • • the wire-like elements formed as helical or spiral coils (forming a net-like or mesh-like structure A61F 2/90) [2006.01]
- 2/89 • • • the wire-like elements comprising two or more adjacent rings flexibly connected by separate members [2013.01]
- 2/90 • • • characterised by a net-like or mesh-like structure [2006.01, 2013.01]
- 2/91 • • • • made from perforated sheets or tubes, e.g. perforated by laser cuts or etched holes [2013.01]
- 2/915 • • • • with bands having a meander structure, adjacent bands being connected to each other [2013.01]
- 2/92 • • Stents in the form of a rolled-up sheet expanding after insertion into the vessel [2006.01, 2013.01]
- 2/93 • • • circumferentially expandable by using ratcheting locks [2013.01]
- 2/94 • • Stents retaining their form, i.e. not being deformable, after placement in the predetermined place [2006.01, 2013.01]
- 2/945 • • • hardenable, e.g. stents formed *in situ* [2013.01]
- 2/95 • Instruments specially adapted for placement or removal of stents or stent-grafts [2013.01]
- 2/954 • • for placing stents or stent-grafts in a bifurcation [2013.01]
- 2/958 • • Inflatable balloons for placing stents or stent-grafts [2013.01]
- 2/962 • • having an outer sleeve [2013.01]
- 2/966 • • • with relative longitudinal movement between outer sleeve and prosthesis, e.g. using a push rod [2013.01]
- 2/97 • • • the outer sleeve being splittable [2013.01]
- 3/00 Lengthening pieces for natural legs [1, 2006.01]**
- 4/00 Methods or devices enabling patients or disabled persons to operate an apparatus or a device not forming part of the body** (operating or control means for prostheses A61F 2/48, A61F 2/68) [4, 2006.01]
-
- 5/00 Orthopaedic methods or devices for non-surgical treatment of bones or joints** (surgical instruments or methods for treatment of bones or joints, devices specially adapted therefor A61B 17/56); **Nursing devices** (bandages, dressings or absorbent pads A61F 13/00) [1, 3, 4, 5, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- This group does not cover chiropractic methods or devices, which are covered by group A61H 1/00.
- 5/01 • Orthopaedic devices, e.g. long-term immobilising or pressure directing devices for treating broken or deformed bones such as splints, casts or braces [1, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • • Orthopaedic corsets [1, 2006.01]
- 5/03 • • Corsets or bandages for abdomen, teat, or breast support, with or without pads (brassières A41C 3/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • • Devices for stretching or reducing fractured limbs; Devices for distractions; Splints [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 5/042 • • • for extension or stretching [6, 2006.01]
- 5/045 • • • • Equipment for beds, treatment tables, floor frames or the like [6, 2006.01]
- 5/048 • • • • Traction splints [6, 2006.01]
- 5/05 • • • for immobilising (A61F 5/042 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 5/052 • • • • specially adapted to facilitate walking, e.g. ambulatory braces [6, 2006.01]
- 5/055 • • • • Cervical collars [6, 2006.01]
- 5/058 • • • • Splints (A61F 5/052 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • • Devices for correcting deformities of the nose [1, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • • Devices for correcting deformities of the fingers [1, 2006.01]
- 5/11 • • Devices for correcting deformities of the nails [1, 2006.01]
- 5/14 • • Special medical insertions for shoes for flat-feet, club-feet, or the like (ordinary arch supports A43B 7/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/24 • • Trusses [1, 2006.01]
- 5/26 • • • with belt springs [1, 2006.01]
- 5/28 • • • Supports for trusses [1, 2006.01]
- 5/30 • • Pressure pads (corn-pads, corn-rings A61F 13/06) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/32 • • • Adjustable pressure pads [1, 2006.01]
- 5/34 • • • Pressure pads filled with air or liquid (valves specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/37 • Restraining devices for the body or for body parts; Restraining shirts [1, 2006.01]
- 5/40 • Suspensory bandages [1, 2006.01]
- 5/41 • Devices for promoting penis erection (penis implants A61F 2/26; massage of the genitals A61H 19/00) [4, 2006.01]
- 5/44 • Devices worn by the patient for reception of urine, faeces, catamenial or other discharge (absorbent pads, e.g. sanitary towels, A61F 13/15; drainage appliances for wounds A61M 27/00); Colostomy devices (adhesives for colostomy devices A61L 24/00; materials for colostomy devices A61L 28/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/441 • • having deodorant means, e.g. filters [4, 2006.01]
- 5/442 • • having irrigation ports or means (irrigators A61M 3/02) [4, 2006.01]
- 5/443 • • having hydrocolloid type seals, e.g. gels, starches, karaya gums [4, 2006.01]
- 5/445 • • Colostomy devices (A61F 5/441, A61F 5/442, A61F 5/443 take precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 5/447 • • • Bag anticollapse features [4, 2006.01]
- 5/448 • • • Means attaching bag to seal ring [4, 2006.01]
- 5/449 • • • Body securing means, e.g. belts, garments [4, 2006.01]
- 5/451 • • Genital receptacles (A61F 5/441, A61F 5/442, A61F 5/443 take precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 5/452 • • • with separate faecal receiving compartment [4, 2006.01]
- 5/453 • • • for collecting urine or other discharge from male member (A61F 6/04 takes precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 5/455 • • • for collecting urine or discharge from female member [4, 2006.01]
- 5/457 • • • Body securing means, e.g. belts, straps or harnesses [4, 2006.01]
- 5/458 • • • • adherent or inflatable type [4, 2006.01]
- 5/48 • Devices for preventing wetting or pollution of the bed [1, 2006.01]

- 5/50 • Devices for preventing finger-sucking [1, 2006.01]
- 5/56 • Devices for preventing snoring [1, 2006.01]
- 5/58 • Apparatus for correcting stammering or stuttering [1, 2006.01]

6/00 Contraceptive devices; Pessaries; Applicators therefor (chemical aspects of contraception A61K) [5, 2006.01]

- 6/02 • for use by males (A61F 6/20 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 6/04 • • Condoms, sheaths or the like [5, 2006.01]
- 6/06 • for use by females (A61F 6/20 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 6/08 • • Pessaries, i.e. devices worn in the vagina to support the uterus, remedy a malposition or prevent conception [5, 2006.01]
- 6/10 • • • Diaphragms [5, 2006.01]
- 6/12 • • • Inserters or removers [5, 2006.01]
- 6/14 • • • intra-uterine type [5, 2006.01]
- 6/16 • • • inflatable [5, 2006.01]
- 6/18 • • • Inserters or removers [5, 2006.01]
- 6/20 • Vas deferens occluders; Fallopian occluders [5, 2006.01]
- 6/22 • • implantable in tubes [5, 2006.01]
- 6/24 • • • characterised by valve means [5, 2006.01]

7/00 Heating or cooling appliances for medical or therapeutic treatment of the human body (heating or cooling means in connection with bedsteads or mattresses A47C 21/00; hyperthermia using electric or magnetic fields or ultrasound A61N) [1, 5, 2006.01]

- 7/02 • Compresses or poultices for effecting heating or cooling [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 7/03 • • thermophore, i.e. self-heating [3, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • Warming pads, pans or mats (A61F 7/02 takes precedence); Hot-water bottles [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • Cooling bags, e.g. ice-bags [1, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • Devices for heating or cooling internal body cavities [1, 2006.01]

Treatment or protection of the eyes or ears; Substitution by other senses

9/00 Methods or devices for treatment of the eyes; Devices for putting in contact-lenses; Devices to correct squinting; Apparatus to guide the blind; Protective devices for the eyes, carried on the body or in the hand (caps with means for protecting the eyes A42B 1/0181; visors for helmets A42B 3/22; eye baths A61H 35/02; sunglasses or goggles having the same features as spectacles G02C) [1, 2006.01]

- 9/007 • Methods or devices for eye surgery [6, 2006.01]
- 9/008 • • using laser [7, 2006.01]
- 9/009 • • • Auxiliary devices for making contact with the eyeball and coupling-in laser light [7, 2006.01]
- 9/01 • • • Treatment of the cornea [7, 2006.01]
- 9/011 • • • invasive [7, 2006.01]
- 9/013 • • for compensation of ocular refraction (A61F 9/008 takes precedence) [6, 7, 2006.01]
- 9/02 • Goggles (for swimming A63B 33/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • Eye-masks [1, 2006.01]
- 9/06 • • Masks, shields, or hoods for welders (safety devices for welding in general F16P 1/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 9/08 • Devices or methods enabling eye-patients to replace direct visual perception by another kind of perception [1, 2006.01]

11/00 Methods or devices for treatment of the ears, e.g. surgical; Protective devices for the ears, carried on the body or in the hand (headwear, e.g. caps or helmets, with means for protecting the ears A42B 1/0186, A42B 3/16) [1, 2006.01]

- 11/04 • Devices or methods enabling ear patients to replace direct auditory perception by another kind of perception [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • Protective devices for the ears [5, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • • internal, e.g. earplugs [5, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • • • inflatable or expandable [5, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • • • External mounting means [5, 2006.01]
- 11/14 • • external, e.g. earcaps or earmuffs [5, 2006.01]

Bandages; Dressings or absorbent pads; First-aid kits

- 13/00 • **Bandages or dressings** (suspensory bandages A61F 5/40; radioactive dressings A61M 36/14); **Absorbent pads** (chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, bandages, dressings or absorbent pads A61L 15/00, A61L 26/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • Adhesive plasters or dressings (A61F 13/06-A61F 13/15 take precedence; surgical adhesives or cements A61L 24/00) [1, 4, 5, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • Plaster of Paris bandages; Other stiffening bandages (A61F 13/06-A61F 13/15 take precedence; orthopaedic casts made from stiffening bandages A61F 5/01) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • specially adapted for feet or legs; Corn-pads; Corn-rings [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • Elastic stockings; for contracting aneurisms [1, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • specially adapted for fingers, hands, or arms; Finger-stalls; Nail-protectors [1, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • specially adapted for the head or neck [1, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • specially adapted for the breast or abdomen (corsets or bandages for support of breast or abdomen A61F 5/03) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/15 • Absorbent pads, e.g. sanitary towels, swabs or tampons for external or internal application to the body (non-absorbent catamenial receptacles A61F 5/44); Supporting or fastening means therefor; Tampon applicators [5, 2006.01]
- 13/20 • • Tampons, e.g. catamenial tampons; Accessories therefor [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 13/22 • • • Tampons made of rolled-up material [5, 2006.01]
- 13/24 • • • Cup-shaped type tampons [5, 2006.01]
- 13/26 • • • Means for inserting tampons [5, 2006.01]
- 13/28 • • • • with lubricating means [5, 2006.01]
- 13/30 • • • • Distal portion of inserting means being deformed, expanded, or ruptured to permit passage of insert therethrough [5, 2006.01]
- 13/32 • • • • with slidable ejector, e.g. plunger or ram, inside tubular inserting means [5, 2006.01]
- 13/34 • • • Means for withdrawing tampons [5, 2006.01]
- 13/36 • • Surgical swabs, e.g. for absorbency or packing body cavities during surgery (A61F 13/38, A61F 13/40 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/38 • • Swabs having a stick-type handle (A61F 13/40 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]

A61F

- 13/40 • • having means integral therewith for supplying media to the absorbent material, e.g. contained in a rupturable reservoir [5, 2006.01]
- 13/42 • • with wetness indicator or alarm [5, 2006.01]
- 13/44 • • with radio-opaque material or signalling means for residual material [5, 2006.01]
- 13/45 • • characterised by the shape (cup-shaped type tampons A61F 13/24) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/47 • • • Sanitary towels, incontinence pads or napkins (A61F 13/49 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/471 • • • specially adapted for male use [7, 2006.01]
- 13/472 • • • specially adapted for female use [7, 2006.01]
- 13/474 • • • adjustable [7, 2006.01]
- 13/475 • • • characterised by edge leakage prevention means [7, 2006.01]
- 13/476 • • • characterised by encircling the crotch region of the undergarment, e.g. with flaps [7, 2006.01]
- 13/49 • • • specially adapted to be worn around the waist, e.g. diapers, nappies [7, 2006.01]
- 13/491 • • • specially adapted for gender distinct urine discharge pattern [7, 2006.01]
- 13/493 • • • adjustable [7, 2006.01]
- 13/494 • • • characterised by edge leakage prevention means [7, 2006.01]
- 13/495 • • • with faecal cavity [7, 2006.01]
- 13/496 • • • in the form of pants or briefs [7, 2006.01]
- 13/505 • • with separable parts, e.g. combination of disposable and reusable parts (A61F 13/20 takes precedence; supporting or fastening means A61F 13/56) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/51 • • characterised by the outer layers of the pads (A61F 13/20 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/511 • • • Topsheet, i.e. the permeable cover or layer facing the skin [7, 2006.01]
- 13/512 • • • characterised by its apertures, e.g. perforations [7, 2006.01]
- 13/513 • • • having areas of different permeability [7, 2006.01]
- 13/514 • • • Backsheet, i.e. the impermeable cover or layer furthest from the skin [7, 2006.01]
- 13/515 • • • characterised by the interconnection of the topsheet and the backsheet [7, 2006.01]
- 13/53 • • characterised by the absorbing medium (A61F 13/20 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/531 • • • having a homogeneous composition through the thickness of the pad (A61F 13/538, A61F 13/539 take precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/532 • • • inhomogeneous in the plane of the pad [7, 2006.01]
- 13/533 • • • • having discontinuous areas of compression [7, 2006.01]
- 13/534 • • • having an inhomogeneous composition through the thickness of the pad (A61F 13/538, A61F 13/539 take precedence; homogeneous cores with tissue wrapping A61F 13/531) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/535 • • • • inhomogeneous in the plane of the pad, e.g. core absorbent layers being of different sizes (A61F 13/537 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 13/536 • • • • having discontinuous areas of compression [7, 2006.01]
- 13/537 • • • • characterised by a layer facilitating or inhibiting flow in one direction or plane, e.g. a wicking layer [7, 2006.01]
- 13/538 • • • characterised by specific fibre orientation or weave [7, 2006.01]
- 13/539 • • • characterised by the connection of absorbent layers with each other or with the outer layers [7, 2006.01]
- 13/551 • • Packages or wrapping arrangements for used pads, e.g. for disposal [7, 2006.01]
- 13/56 • • Supporting or fastening means [5, 2006.01]
- 13/58 • • • Adhesive tab fastener elements (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/60 • • • • with release means associated with tab fasteners [5, 2006.01]
- 13/62 • • • Fabric strip fastener elements, e.g. hook and loop (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/64 • • • Straps, belts, ties or endless bands (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/66 • • • Garments, holders or supports not integral with absorbent pads [5, 2006.01]
- 13/68 • • • • abdominal enclosing type [5, 2006.01]
- 13/70 • • • • with openable or removable crotch portion [5, 2006.01]
- 13/72 • • • • with endless waist encircling band, e.g. panty type [5, 2006.01]
- 13/74 • • • • having means to retain absorbent pads [5, 2006.01]
- 13/76 • • • • transverse to width of the pads or fastener elements, e.g. straps, end flaps or tucks [5, 2006.01]
- 13/78 • • • • • Button or snap fastener elements [5, 2006.01]
- 13/80 • • • • adjustable relative to body crotch area [5, 2006.01]
- 13/82 • • • • with means for attaching to the body [5, 2006.01]
- 13/84 • • Accessories, not otherwise provided for, for absorbent pads [7, 2006.01]
- 15/00 **Auxiliary appliances for wound dressings; Dispensing containers for dressings or bandages [1, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • Devices for cutting bandages of any kind, e.g. shears, cast-cutting saws [1, 2006.01]
- 17/00 **First-aid kits [1, 2006.01]**

A61G TRANSPORT, PERSONAL CONVEYANCES, OR ACCOMMODATION SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR PATIENTS OR DISABLED PERSONS (appliances for aiding patients or disabled persons to walk A61H 3/00); OPERATING TABLES OR CHAIRS; CHAIRS FOR DENTISTRY; FUNERAL DEVICES (embalming corpses A01N 1/00)

Subclass index

MEANS FOR DISPLACING DISABLED PERSONS OR PATIENTS..... 1/00-7/00
 BEDS; TREATMENT ROOMS; NURSING FACILITIES..... 7/00, 10/00, 9/00, 12/00

INCUBATORS OR COUVEUSES FOR BABIES.....	11/00
APPLIANCES FOR OPERATING ROOMS OR DENTISTS ROOMS.....	13/00, 15/00
FUNERAL DEVICES.....	17/00-21/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

1/00 Stretchers [1, 2006.01]

- 1/003 • with facilities for picking up patients or disabled persons, e.g. break-away type or using endless belts [5, 2006.01]
- 1/007 • with skis or sled runners [5, 2006.01]
- 1/01 • Sheets specially adapted for use as or with stretchers [5, 2006.01]
- 1/013 • foldable or collapsible (A61G 1/017 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 1/017 • convertible into chairs [5, 2006.01]
- 1/02 • with wheels [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • Parts, details or accessories, e.g. head-, foot-, or like rests specially adapted for stretchers [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 1/044 • • Straps, bands or belts [5, 2006.01]
- 1/048 • • Handles [5, 2006.01]
- 1/052 • • Struts, spars or legs [5, 2006.01]
- 1/056 • • • Swivelling legs [5, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • Supports for stretchers, e.g. to be placed in or on vehicles [1, 2006.01]

3/00 Ambulance aspects of vehicles; Vehicles with special provisions for transporting patients or disabled persons, or their personal conveyances, e.g. for facilitating access of, or for loading, wheelchairs [1, 5, 2006.01]

- 3/02 • Loading or unloading personal conveyances; Facilitating access of patients or disabled persons to, or exit from, vehicles [5, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • Transfer of seated patients or disabled persons by swinging about an upright axis [5, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • Transfer using ramps, lifts or the like (A61G 3/04 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • Accommodating or securing wheelchairs [5, 2006.01]

5/00 Chairs or personal conveyances specially adapted for patients or disabled persons, e.g. wheelchairs (devices enabling patients or disabled persons to operate an apparatus or device not forming part of the body A61F 4/00; bicycles specially adapted for disabled riders B62K 3/16) [1, 2006.01]

Note(s) [5]

Chairs for patients or disabled persons having removable seats specially adapted to be transferred with the patient or disabled person to a vehicle and support the patient or disabled person during use of the vehicle are classified in group A61G 3/00.

- 5/02 • propelled by the patient or disabled person [1, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • motor-driven (A61G 5/06 takes precedence; motor-operated rests A61G 5/12; for vehicles with handlebars, equipped with three or more wheels B62K 5/003, B62K 5/023) [1, 5, 2006.01, 2013.01]
- 5/06 • with obstacle-mounting facilities, e.g. for climbing stairs [5, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • foldable [5, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • Parts, details or accessories [5, 2006.01]
- 5/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor, e.g. for the head or feet [5, 2006.01]
- 5/14 • • Standing-up or sitting-down aids [5, 2006.01]

Beds or accessories for patients or disabled persons; Treatment rooms for medical purposes; Accommodation for nursing

- 7/00 **Beds specially adapted for nursing; Devices for lifting patients or disabled persons** (equipment for beds, treatment tables, floor frames or the like for extending or stretching A61F 5/045; stretchers with facilities for picking up patients or disabled persons A61G 1/003) [1, 5, 6, 2006.01]
 - 7/002 • having adjustable mattress frame [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/005 • • tiltable around transverse horizontal axis, e.g. for Trendelenburg position [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/008 • • tiltable around longitudinal axis, e.g. for rolling [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/012 • • raising or lowering of the whole mattress frame (A61G 7/005, A61G 7/008 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/015 • • divided into different adjustable sections, e.g. for Gatch position [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/018 • • Control or drive mechanisms (A61G 7/005-A61G 7/015 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/02 • with toilet conveniences, or specially adapted for use with, toilets [1, 5, 2006.01]
 - 7/043 • Beds for promoting or observing sleep [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/047 • Beds for special sanitary purposes (A61G 7/02 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/05 • Parts, details or accessories of beds (devices for prevention against falling out A47C 21/08, A47D 7/00) [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/053 • • Aids for getting into, or out of, bed, e.g. steps or chairs [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/057 • • Arrangements for preventing bed-sores or for supporting patients with burns, e.g. mattresses specially adapted therefor [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/065 • • Rests specially adapted therefor [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/07 • • • for the head or torso [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/075 • • • for the limbs [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/08 • Apparatus for transporting beds [1, 2006.01]
 - 7/10 • Devices for lifting patients or disabled persons, e.g. special adaptations of hoists thereto [1, 2006.01]
 - 7/12 • • for hoisting the patient or disabled person under the arms (A61G 7/14 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/14 • • facilitating both lifting and lateral movement of the patient or disabled person [5, 2006.01]
 - 7/16 • • converting a lying surface into a chair [5, 2006.01]
- 9/00 **Bed-pans, urinals or other sanitary devices for bed-ridden persons; Cleaning devices therefor, e.g. combined with toilet-urinals** (urinals worn by the patient A61F 5/44) [1, 2006.01]
 - 9/02 • Cleaning devices [5, 2006.01]
- 10/00 **Treatment rooms for medical purposes** (baby incubators, couveuses A61G 11/00; devices for gas baths with ozone, hydrogen or the like A61H 33/14; containers or portable cabins for affording breathing protection in general A62B 31/00) [4, 2006.01]
 - 10/02 • with artificial climate; with means to maintain a desired pressure, e.g. for germ-free rooms [4, 2006.01]

A61G

- 10/04 • Oxygen tents [4, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Baby-incubators; Couveuses [1, 2006.01]**
- 12/00 Accommodation for nursing, e.g. in hospitals, not covered by groups A61G 1/00-A61G 11/00, e.g. trolleys for transport of medicaments or food; Prescription lists [1, 2006.01]**

Operating tables or chairs; Dental chairs

- 13/00 Operating tables; Auxiliary appliances therefor** (illumination of operating tables F21L, F21S or F21V) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • Adjustable operating tables; Controls therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • • tiltable around transverse or longitudinal axis [5, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • raising or lowering of the whole table surface (A61G 13/04 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • the table being divided into different adjustable sections [5, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • Parts, details or accessories (surgical drape sheets A61B 46/00) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor; Arrangements of patient-supporting surfaces [5, 2006.01]
- 15/00 Operating chairs; Dental chairs; Accessories specially adapted therefor, e.g. work stands [1, 5, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • Chairs with means to adjust position of patient; Controls therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • • to tilt patient [5, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • • to raise or lower patient (A61G 15/04 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]

A61H PHYSICAL THERAPY APPARATUS, e.g. DEVICES FOR LOCATING OR STIMULATING REFLEX POINTS IN THE BODY; ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION; MASSAGE; BATHING DEVICES FOR SPECIAL THERAPEUTIC OR HYGIENIC PURPOSES OR SPECIFIC PARTS OF THE BODY (electrotherapy, magnetotherapy, radiation therapy, ultrasound therapy A61N)

Note(s)

In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "physical therapy" covers the treatment of disease or disability by means, e.g. mechanical means, as opposed to drugs or surgery. It includes, by way of example, massage, whirlpool baths and devices for exercising a passive body member.

Subclass index

APPLIANCES FOR AIDING PATIENTS OR DISABLED PERSONS TO WALK ABOUT.....3/00
 APPARATUS FOR PASSIVE EXERCISING, FOR EXERCISING THE EYES.....1/00, 5/00
 MASSAGE
 Techniques of massage.....7/00, 9/00, 15/00, 23/00
 Belts, strips or combs for massage.....11/00
 Massage of particular parts of the body and devices therefor.....13/00, 19/00, 21/00
 Accessories for massage.....37/00
 ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION.....31/00
 THERAPEUTIC OR HYGIENIC BATHING.....33/00, 35/00, 36/00
 DEVICES FOR LOCATING OR STIMULATING REFLEX POINTS OF THE BODY.....39/00
 SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....99/00

- 15/08 • • associated with seats for the surgeon or dentist [5, 2006.01]
- 15/10 • Parts, details or accessories (A61G 15/14 takes precedence; dental instruments A61C) [5, 2006.01]
- 15/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor, e.g. for the head or feet [5, 2006.01]
- 15/14 • Dental work stands; Accessories therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 15/16 • • Storage, holding or carrying means for dental handpieces or the like [5, 2006.01]
- 15/18 • • • including retractor for storing flexible hose [5, 2006.01]

Funeral devices

- 17/00 Coffins; Funeral wrappings; Funeral urns [1, 2006.01]**
- 17/007 • characterised by the construction material used, e.g. biodegradable material; Use of several materials [5, 2006.01]
- 17/013 • Foldable coffins [5, 2006.01]
- 17/02 • Coffin closures; Packings therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 17/04 • Fittings for coffins [1, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • Sacks for corpses; Corpse wrappings [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • Urns [1, 2006.01]
- 19/00 Hoisting or lowering devices for coffins [1, 2006.01]**
- 21/00 Funeral aspects of hearses or like vehicles [5, 2006.01]**

- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**

1/00 Apparatus for passive exercising (A61H 5/00 takes precedence); **Vibrating apparatus; Chiropractic devices, e.g. body impacting devices, external devices**

for briefly extending or aligning unbroken bones [1, 2, 2006.01]

	Note(s) [7]		
	This group <u>does not cover</u> orthopaedic methods or devices, which are covered by group A61F 5/00		
1/02	• Stretching or bending apparatus for exercising [1, 2006.01]		
3/00	Appliances for aiding patients or disabled persons to walk about (apparatus for helping babies to walk A47D 13/04) [1, 2006.01]		
3/02	• Crutches [1, 2006.01]		
3/04	• Wheeled walking aids for patients or disabled persons [1, 2006.01]		
3/06	• Walking aids for blind persons (replacing direct visual perception by another kind of perception A61F 9/08) [1, 2006.01]		
5/00	Exercisers for the eyes [1, 2006.01]		
7/00	Devices for suction-kneading massage; Devices for massaging the skin by rubbing or brushing not otherwise provided for (electro-medical massage devices applying electric current by contact A61N 1/18) [1, 2006.01]		
9/00	Pneumatic or hydraulic massage [1, 2006.01]		
11/00	Belts, strips, or combs for massage purposes [1, 2006.01]		
11/02	• Massage devices with strips oscillating lengthwise [1, 2006.01]		
13/00	Gum massage [1, 2006.01]		
15/00	Massage by means of rollers, balls, e.g. inflatable, chains, or roller chains [1, 2006.01]		
15/02	• adapted for simultaneous treatment with light, heat, or drugs [1, 2006.01]		
19/00	Massage of the genitals [1, 2006.01]		
21/00	Massage devices for cavities of the body [1, 2006.01]		
23/00	Percussion or vibration massage, e.g. using supersonic vibration; Suction-vibration massage; Massage with moving diaphragms [1, 2006.01]		
23/02	• with electric or magnetic drive [1, 2, 2006.01]		
23/04	• with hydraulic or pneumatic drive [1, 2006.01]		
23/06	• Hand percussion [1, 2006.01]		
31/00	Artificial respiration or heart stimulation, e.g. heart massage (artificial respiration by treatment with gas or air, e.g. mouth-to-mouth respiration, A61M 16/00; applying electric currents by contact electrodes for stimulation, e.g. heart pace-makers, A61N 1/36) [1, 2006.01]	31/02	• "Iron-lungs", whether or not combined with gas breathing means [1, 2006.01]
		33/00	Bathing devices for special therapeutic or hygienic purposes (A61H 35/00 takes precedence; for subaquatic intestinal cleaning A61M 9/00; electric or magnetic baths, applying ionised fluids A61N 1/44) [1, 6, 2006.01]
		33/02	• Bathing devices for use with gas-containing liquid, or liquid in which gas is led or generated, e.g. carbon dioxide baths [1, 2006.01]
		33/04	• Appliances for sand, mud, or foam baths; Appliances for metal baths, e.g. using metal salt solutions [1, 6, 2006.01]
		33/06	• Artificial hot-air or cold-air baths; Steam or gas baths or douches, e.g. sauna or Finnish baths (pneumatic chambers A61G 10/00) [1, 2006.01]
		33/08	• • Air douches for hygienic purposes [1, 2006.01]
		33/10	• • Devices on tubs for steam baths [1, 2006.01]
		33/12	• • Steam baths for the face [1, 2006.01]
		33/14	• Devices for gas baths with ozone, hydrogen, or the like [1, 2006.01]
		35/00	Baths for specific parts of the body, e.g. breast douches (bidets without upward-spraying means A47K 3/26; devices for cleaning the buttocks A47K 7/08; for subaquatic intestinal cleaning A61M 9/00) [1, 6, 2006.01]
		35/02	• for the eyes [6, 2006.01]
		35/04	• for the nose [6, 2006.01]
		36/00	Sweating suits [1, 2006.01]
		37/00	Accessories for massage [1, 6, 2006.01]
		39/00	Devices for locating or stimulating specific reflex points of the body for physical therapy, e.g. acupuncture (locating by using electric currents or magnetic fields A61B 5/05; locating by bioelectric signal detection A61B 5/24) [2, 2006.01]
		39/02	• Devices for locating such points [2, 2006.01]
		39/04	• Devices for pressing such points, e.g. shiatsu [2, 2006.01]
		39/06	• Devices for heating or cooling such points within cell-life limits [2, 2006.01]
		39/08	• Devices for applying needles to such points, i.e. for acupuncture [2, 2006.01]
		99/00	Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]
A61J	CONTAINERS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL OR PHARMACEUTICAL PURPOSES; DEVICES OR METHODS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR BRINGING PHARMACEUTICAL PRODUCTS INTO PARTICULAR PHYSICAL OR ADMINISTERING FORMS; DEVICES FOR ADMINISTERING FOOD OR MEDICINES ORALLY; BABY COMFORTERS; DEVICES FOR RECEIVING SPITTLE		

Subclass index

CONTAINERS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL OR PHARMACEUTICAL PURPOSES.....	1/00
DEVICES OR METHODS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR BRINGING PHARMACEUTICAL PRODUCTS INTO PARTICULAR PHYSICAL OR ADMINISTERING FORMS.....	3/00
ADMINISTRATION OF FOOD OR MEDICINE	
Feeding-bottles, teats, feeding-tubes.....	9/00, 11/00, 15/00
Other devices.....	7/00

A61J

Breast-nipple shields.....	13/00
BABY COMFORTERS.....	17/00
DEVICES FOR RECEIVING SPITTLE.....	19/00

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1/00 Containers specially adapted for medical or pharmaceutical purposes (capsules or the like for oral use A61J 3/07; specially adapted for surgical or diagnostic appliances or instruments A61B 50/30; containers for radioactive substances G21F 5/00) [1, 4, 5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/03 • for pills or tablets (containers for pills or tablets with special dispensing means therefor B65D 83/04) [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/05 • for collecting, storing or administering blood, plasma or medical fluids [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/06 • • Ampoules or cartridges (syringe ampoules or cartridges A61M 5/28) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/10 • • Bag-type containers [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/12 • • • with means for holding samples of contents [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/14 • • Details; Accessories therefor (A61J 7/00 takes precedence; openers B65D, B67B 7/00) [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/16 • • • Holders for containers [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/18 • • • Arrangements for indicating condition of container contents, e.g. sterile condition [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/20 • • • Arrangements for transferring fluids, e.g. from vial to syringe [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>1/22 • • • • with means for metering the amount of fluid [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/00 Devices or methods specially adapted for bringing pharmaceutical products into particular physical or administering forms (chemical aspects, <u>see</u> the relevant classes) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/02 • into the form of powders [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/04 • into the form of ointments [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/06 • into the form of pills, lozenges or dragees [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/07 • into the form of capsules or similar small containers for oral use [1, 2006.01]</p> | <p>3/08 • into the form of suppositories or sticks [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>3/10 • into the form of compressed tablets (tablet presses B30B 11/00) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p><u>Administering medicines orally; Feeding-bottles in general; Teats; Devices for receiving spittle</u></p> <p>7/00 Devices for administering medicines orally, e.g. spoons (weighing spoons G01G 19/56); Pill counting devices; Arrangements for time indication or reminder for taking medicine [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>7/02 • Pill counting devices [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>7/04 • Arrangements for time indication or reminder for taking medicine, e.g. programmed dispensers [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/00 Feeding-bottles in general [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/02 • with thermometers [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/04 • with means for supplying air [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/06 • Holders for bottles [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/08 • Protective covers for bottles [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>11/00 Teats [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>11/02 • with means for supplying air [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>11/04 • with means for fastening to bottles [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/00 Breast-nipple shields [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/00 Feeding-tubes for therapeutic purposes [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>17/00 Baby comforters; Teething rings [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>17/02 • Teething rings [5, 2006.01]</p> <p>19/00 Devices for receiving spittle, e.g. spittoons (for dentists A61C 17/14) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>19/02 • Sputum flasks [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>19/04 • Spittoons with water supply [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>19/06 • Combustible sputum cups [1, 2006.01]</p> |
|--|---|

A61K PREPARATIONS FOR MEDICAL, DENTAL, OR TOILET PURPOSES (devices or methods specially adapted for bringing pharmaceutical products into particular physical or administering forms A61J 3/00; chemical aspects of, or use of materials for deodorisation of air, for disinfection or sterilisation, or for bandages, dressings, absorbent pads or surgical articles A61L; soap compositions C11D)

Note(s) [1, 7, 2006.01]

1. This subclass covers the following subject matter, whether set forth as a composition (mixture), process of preparing the composition or process of treating using the composition:
 - a. Drug or other biological compositions which are capable of:
 - preventing, alleviating, treating or curing abnormal or pathological conditions of the living body by such means as destroying a parasitic organism, or limiting the effect of the disease or abnormality by chemically altering the physiology of the host or parasite (biocides A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00);
 - maintaining, increasing, decreasing, limiting, or destroying a physiological body function, e.g. vitamin compositions, sex sterilants, fertility inhibitors, growth promoters, or the like (sex sterilants for invertebrates, e.g. insects, A01N; plant growth regulators A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00);
 - diagnosing a physiological condition or state by an in vivo test, e.g. X-ray contrast or skin patch test compositions (measuring or testing processes involving enzymes or microorganisms C12Q; in vitro testing of biological material, e.g. blood, urine, G01N, e.g. G01N 33/48);
 - b. Body treating compositions generally intended for deodorising, protecting, adorning or grooming a body, e.g. cosmetics, dentifrices, tooth filling materials.

2. Attention is drawn to the definitions of groups of chemical elements following the title of section C.
3. Attention is drawn to the notes in class C07, for example the notes following the title of the subclass C07D, setting forth the rules for classifying organic compounds in that class, which rules are also applicable, if not otherwise indicated, to the classification of organic compounds in A61K.
4. In this subclass, with the exception of group A61K 8/00, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
5. Therapeutic activity of medicinal preparations is further classified in subclass A61P.

Subclass index

DENTAL PREPARATIONS.....	6/00
COSMETICS, PERFUMES.....	8/00
PHARMACEUTICAL PREPARATIONS	
characterised by form.....	9/00
characterised by active ingredients	
organic active ingredients.....	31/00, 35/00, 36/00, 38/00
materials from animals, protozoa, bacteria or viruses.....	35/00
materials from algae, fungi, lichens or plants.....	36/00
inorganic active ingredients.....	33/00, 35/00
obtained by treating material with wave energy or particle radiation.....	41/00
for testing <i>in vivo</i>	49/00, 51/00
radioactive ingredients.....	51/00
Vaccines.....	39/00, 45/00
Carriers.....	47/00
Medicinal preparations with genetic material, gene therapy.....	48/00

6/00	Preparations for dentistry [3, 2006.01, 2020.01]	6/73	• • • comprising sulfur-containing compounds [2020.01]
6/15	• Compositions characterised by their physical properties [2020.01]	6/74	• • • comprising phosphorus-containing compounds [2020.01]
6/16	• • Refractive index [2020.01]	6/75	• • • • Apatite [2020.01]
6/17	• • Particle size [2020.01]	6/76	• • • comprising silicon-containing compounds [2020.01]
6/18	• • causing dental retraction, e.g. compositions for widening the sulcus for making dental impressions or removing teeth [2020.01]	6/77	• • • Glass [2020.01]
6/19	• • Self-expanding, e.g. for filling teeth [2020.01]	6/78	• • Pigments [2020.01]
6/20	• Protective coatings for natural or artificial teeth, e.g. sealings, dye coatings or varnish [2020.01]	6/79	• • Initiators [2020.01]
6/25	• Compositions for detecting or measuring, e.g. of irregularities on natural or artificial teeth [2020.01]	6/80	• Preparations for artificial teeth, for filling teeth or for capping teeth [2020.01]
6/30	• Compositions for temporarily or permanently fixing teeth or palates, e.g. primers for dental adhesives [2020.01]	6/802	• • comprising ceramics [2020.01]
6/35	• • Preparations for stabilising dentures in the mouth [2020.01]	6/804	• • • comprising manganese oxide [2020.01]
6/40	• Primers (for dental adhesives A61K 6/30) [2020.01]	6/807	• • • comprising magnesium oxide [2020.01]
6/50	• Preparations specially adapted for dental root treatment [2020.01]	6/809	• • • comprising beryllium oxide [2020.01]
6/52	• • Cleaning; Disinfecting [2020.01]	6/811	• • • comprising chromium oxide [2020.01]
6/54	• • Filling; Sealing [2020.01]	6/813	• • • comprising iron oxide [2020.01]
6/56	• • Apical treatment [2020.01]	6/816	• • • comprising titanium oxide [2020.01]
6/58	• • specially adapted for dental implants [2020.01]	6/818	• • • comprising zirconium oxide [2020.01]
6/60	• comprising organic or organo-metallic additives [2020.01]	6/82	• • • comprising hafnium oxide [2020.01]
6/61	• • Cationic, anionic or redox initiators [2020.01]	6/822	• • • comprising rare earth metal oxides [2020.01]
6/62	• • Photochemical radical initiators [2020.01]	6/824	• • • comprising transition metal oxides [2020.01]
6/64	• • Thermal radical initiators [2020.01]	6/827	• • • Leucite [2020.01]
6/65	• • Dyes [2020.01]	6/829	• • comprising cermet composites [2020.01]
6/66	• • • Photochromic dyes [2020.01]	6/831	• • comprising non-metallic elements or compounds thereof, e.g. carbon [2020.01]
6/68	• • • Thermochromic dyes [2020.01]	6/833	• • • Glass-ceramic composites [2020.01]
6/69	• • Medicaments [2020.01]	6/836	• • • Glass [2020.01]
6/70	• comprising inorganic additives [2020.01]	6/838	• • • Phosphorus compounds, e.g. apatite [2020.01]
6/71	• • Fillers [2020.01]	6/84	• • comprising metals or alloys [2020.01]
6/72	• • • comprising nitrogen-containing compounds [2020.01]	6/842	• • • Rare earth metals [2020.01]
		6/844	• • • Noble metals [2020.01]
		6/847	• • • Amalgams [2020.01]
		6/849	• • comprising inorganic cements [2020.01]
		6/851	• • • Portland cements [2020.01]
		6/853	• • • Silicates [2020.01]
		6/856	• • • Pozzolans [2020.01]

- 6/858 • • • Calcium sulfates, e.g. gypsum [2020.01]
 6/86 • • • Al-cements [2020.01]
 6/862 • • • Ca-Al-sulfate-cements [2020.01]
 6/864 • • • Phosphate cements (apatite A61K 6/838) [2020.01]
 6/867 • • • Ammonium cements [2020.01]
 6/869 • • • Zeolites [2020.01]
 6/871 • • • Quartz; SiO₂ [2020.01]
 6/873 • • • Carbonates [2020.01]
 6/876 • • • Calcium oxide [2020.01]
 6/878 • • • Zirconium oxide [2020.01]
 6/88 • • • Chromium oxide [2020.01]
 6/882 • • • Carbides [2020.01]
 6/884 • • comprising natural or synthetic resins [2020.01]
 6/887 • • • Compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2020.01]
 6/889 • • • • Polycarboxylate cements; Glass ionomer cements [2020.01]
 6/891 • • • Compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2020.01]
 6/893 • • • • Polyurethanes [2020.01]
 6/896 • • • • Polyorganosilicon compounds [2020.01]
 6/898 • • • Polysaccharides [2020.01]
 6/90 • Compositions for taking dental impressions [2020.01]
- 8/00 Cosmetics or similar toilet preparations [2006.01]**
Note(s) [2006.01]
 Use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations is further classified in subclass A61Q.
- 8/02 • characterised by special physical form [2006.01]
Note(s) [2006.01]
 In this group, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication of the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
- 8/03 • • Liquid compositions with two or more distinct layers [2006.01]
 8/04 • • Dispersions; Emulsions [2006.01]
 8/06 • • • Emulsions [2006.01]
 8/11 • • Encapsulated compositions [2006.01]
 8/14 • • Liposomes [2006.01]
 8/18 • characterised by the composition [2006.01]
Note(s) [2006.01]
 In this group, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication of the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
- 8/19 • • containing inorganic ingredients [2006.01]
 8/20 • • • Halogens; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/21 • • • • Fluorides; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]
 8/22 • • • Peroxides; Oxygen; Ozone [2006.01]
 8/23 • • • Sulfur; Selenium; Tellurium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/24 • • • Phosphorus; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/25 • • • Silicon; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/26 • • • Aluminium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/27 • • • Zinc; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/28 • • • Zirconium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/29 • • • Titanium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]
 8/30 • • containing organic compounds [2006.01]
- 8/31 • • • Hydrocarbons [2006.01]
 8/33 • • • containing oxygen [2006.01]
 8/34 • • • • Alcohols [2006.01]
 8/35 • • • • Ketones, e.g. quinones, benzophenone [2006.01]
 8/36 • • • • Carboxylic acids; Salts or anhydrides thereof [2006.01]
 8/362 • • • • • Polycarboxylic acids [2006.01]
 8/365 • • • • • Hydroxycarboxylic acids; Ketocarboxylic acids [2006.01]
 8/368 • • • • • with carboxyl groups directly bound to carbon atoms of aromatic rings [2006.01]
 8/37 • • • • Esters of carboxylic acids [2006.01]
 8/38 • • • • Percompounds, e.g. peracids [2006.01]
 8/39 • • • • Derivatives containing from 2 to 10 oxyalkylene groups [2006.01]
 8/40 • • • containing nitrogen (quinones containing nitrogen A61K 8/35) [2006.01]
 8/41 • • • • Amines [2006.01]
 8/42 • • • • Amides [2006.01]
 8/43 • • • • Guanidines [2006.01]
 8/44 • • • • Aminocarboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. aminocarboxylic acids containing sulfur; Salts, esters or N-acylated derivatives thereof [2006.01]
 8/45 • • • • Derivatives containing from 2 to 10 oxyalkylene groups [2006.01]
 8/46 • • • containing sulfur (A61K 8/44 takes precedence) [2006.01]
 8/49 • • • containing heterocyclic compounds [2006.01]
 8/55 • • • containing phosphorus [2006.01]
 8/58 • • • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, halogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur or phosphorus [2006.01]
 8/60 • • • Sugars; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]
 8/63 • • • Steroids; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]
Note(s) [2006.01]
 This group covers steroids, as defined in Note (1) after the title of subclass C07J.
- 8/64 • • • Proteins; Peptides; Derivatives or degradation products thereof [2006.01]
 8/65 • • • • Collagen; Gelatin; Keratin; Derivatives or degradation products thereof [2006.01]
 8/66 • • • • Enzymes [2006.01]
 8/67 • • • Vitamins [2006.01]
 8/68 • • • Sphingolipids, e.g. ceramides, cerebrosides, gangliosides [2006.01]
 8/69 • • • containing fluorine [2006.01]
 8/70 • • • • containing perfluoro groups, e.g. perfluoroethers [2006.01]
 8/72 • • containing organic macromolecular compounds [2006.01]
 8/73 • • • Polysaccharides [2006.01]
 8/81 • • • obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
 8/84 • • • obtained by reactions other than those involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
 8/85 • • • • Polyesters [2006.01]
 8/86 • • • • Polyethers [2006.01]
 8/87 • • • • Polyurethanes [2006.01]
 8/88 • • • • Polyamides [2006.01]
 8/89 • • • • Polysiloxanes [2006.01]

- 8/891 • • • • • saturated, e.g. dimethicone, phenyl trimethicone, C24-C28 methicone or stearyl dimethicone **[2006.01]**
- 8/892 • • • • • • modified by a hydroxy group, e.g. dimethiconol **[2006.01]**
- 8/893 • • • • • • modified by an alkoxy or aryloxy group, e.g. behenoxy dimethicone or stearoxy dimethicone **[2006.01]**
- 8/894 • • • • • • modified by a polyoxyalkylene group, e.g. cetyl dimethicone copolyol **[2006.01]**
- 8/895 • • • • • • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups, e.g. vinyl dimethicone **[2006.01]**
- 8/896 • • • • • • containing atoms other than silicon, carbon, oxygen and hydrogen, e.g. dimethicone copolyol phosphate **[2006.01]**
- 8/897 • • • • • • containing halogen, e.g. fluorosilicones **[2006.01]**
- 8/898 • • • • • • containing nitrogen, e.g. amodimethicone, trimethyl silyl amodimethicone or dimethicone propyl PG-betaine **[2006.01]**
- 8/899 • • • • • • containing sulfur, e.g. sodium PG-propyldimethicone thiosulfate copolyol **[2006.01]**
- 8/90 • • • Block copolymers (A61K 8/89 takes precedence) **[2006.01]**
- 8/91 • • • Graft copolymers (A61K 8/89 takes precedence) **[2006.01]**
- 8/92 • • Oils, fats or waxes; Derivatives thereof, e.g. hydrogenation products **[2006.01]**
- 8/96 • • containing materials, or derivatives thereof, of undetermined constitution **[2006.01]**
- 8/97 • • • from algae, fungi, lichens or plants; from derivatives thereof **[2006.01, 2017.01]**
- 8/9706 • • • • Algae **[2017.01]**
- 8/9711 • • • • • Phaeophycota or Phaeophyta [brown algae], e.g. Fucus **[2017.01]**
- 8/9717 • • • • • Rhodophycota or Rhodophyta [red algae], e.g. Porphyra **[2017.01]**
- 8/9722 • • • • • Chlorophycota or Chlorophyta [green algae], e.g. Chlorella **[2017.01]**
- 8/9728 • • • • Fungi, e.g. yeasts **[2017.01]**
- 8/9733 • • • • Lichens **[2017.01]**
- 8/9739 • • • • Bryophyta [mosses] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9741 • • • • Pteridophyta [ferns] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9749 • • • • • Filicopsida or Pteridopsida **[2017.01]**
- 8/9755 • • • • • Gymnosperms [Coniferophyta] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9761 • • • • • Cupressaceae [Cypress family], e.g. juniper or cypress **[2017.01]**
- 8/9767 • • • • • Pinaceae [Pine family], e.g. pine or cedar **[2017.01]**
- 8/9771 • • • • • Ginkgophyta, e.g. Ginkgoaceae [Ginkgo family] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9778 • • • • • Gnetophyta, e.g. Ephedraceae [Mormon-tea family] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9783 • • • • • Angiosperms [Magnoliophyta] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9789 • • • • • Magnoliopsida [dicotyledons] **[2017.01]**
- 8/9794 • • • • • Liliopsida [monocotyledons] **[2017.01]**
- 8/98 • • • of animal origin **[2006.01]**
- 8/99 • • • from microorganisms other than algae or fungi, e.g. protozoa or bacteria **[2006.01, 2017.01]**
- 9/00 Medicinal preparations characterised by special physical form [1, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • • Suppositories; Bougies; Bases for suppositories or bougies (apparatus for making A61J 3/08; devices for introducing into the body A61M 31/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 9/06 • • Ointments; Bases therefor (apparatus for making A61J 3/04) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 9/08 • • Solutions **[2, 3, 2006.01]**
- 9/10 • • Dispersions; Emulsions **[2, 3, 2006.01]**
- 9/107 • • • Emulsions **[5, 2006.01]**
- 9/113 • • • • Multiple emulsions, e.g. oil-in-water-in-oil **[5, 2006.01]**
- 9/12 • • Aerosols; Foams **[2, 3, 2006.01]**
- 9/127 • • Liposomes **[5, 2006.01]**
- 9/133 • • • Unilamellar vesicles **[5, 2006.01]**
- 9/14 • • Particulate form, e.g. powders (microcapsules A61K 9/50) **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/16 • • Agglomerates; Granulates; Microbeadlets **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/18 • • Adsorbates **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/19 • • lyophilised **[6, 2006.01]**
- 9/20 • • Pills, lozenges or tablets **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/22 • • Sustained or differential release type **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/24 • • • Layered or laminated unitary dosage forms **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/26 • • • Discrete particles in supporting matrix **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/28 • • Dragees; Coated pills or tablets **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/30 • • • Organic coatings **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/32 • • • • containing solid synthetic polymers **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/34 • • • • containing natural gums or resins **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/36 • • • • containing carbohydrates or derivatives thereof (A61K 9/34 takes precedence) **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/38 • • • • containing proteins or derivatives thereof **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/40 • • • • • Gelatin containing **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/42 • • • • containing waxes, higher fatty acids, higher fatty alcohols, or derivatives thereof, e.g. chocolate **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/44 • • printed, embossed, grooved, or perforated **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/46 • • effervescent **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/48 • • Preparations in capsules, e.g. of gelatin, of chocolate **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/50 • • Microcapsules (A61K 9/52 takes precedence) **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/51 • • • Nanocapsules **[5, 2006.01]**
- 9/52 • • Sustained or differential release type **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/54 • • • containing discrete particles with coatings of different thicknesses or different materials **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/56 • • • • Organic coatings **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/58 • • • • • containing solid synthetic polymers **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/60 • • • • • containing natural gums or resins **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/62 • • • • • containing carbohydrates or derivatives thereof (A61K 9/60 takes precedence) **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/64 • • • • • containing proteins or derivatives thereof **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/66 • • • containing emulsions, dispersions or solutions **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/68 • • chewing gum type **[2, 2006.01]**
- 9/70 • • Web, sheet or filament bases **[2, 2006.01]**

9/72 • for smoking or inhaling [2, 2006.01]

Note(s) [2006.01]

1. A composition, i.e. a mixture of two or more components, is classified in the last of groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00 that provides for at least one of these components. The components may be single compounds or other single ingredients.
2. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (1), and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00. The part can be either a single component or a composition in itself.
3. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (1) or (2), and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00. This can for example be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

31/00 Medicinal preparations containing organic active ingredients [2, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

1. Organic active compounds forming salts or complexes with heavy metals are not classified in groups A61K 31/28, A61K 31/555 or A61K 31/7135, unless explicit indication to the contrary is made, e.g. hemin A61K 31/555.
2. In this group, the expressions "containing further heterocyclic rings" and "condensed with heterocyclic rings" also cover compounds having two or more identical heterocyclic rings.

- 31/01 • Hydrocarbons [2, 2006.01]
 31/015 • • carbocyclic [2, 2006.01]
 31/02 • Halogenated hydrocarbons [2, 2006.01]
 31/025 • • carbocyclic [2, 2006.01]
 31/03 • • • aromatic [2, 2006.01]
 31/035 • • having aliphatic unsaturation [2, 2006.01]
 31/04 • Nitro compounds [2, 2006.01]
 31/045 • Hydroxy compounds, e.g. alcohols; Salts thereof, e.g. alcoholates (hydroperoxides A61K 31/327) [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/047 • • having two or more hydroxy groups, e.g. sorbitol [7, 2006.01]
 31/05 • • Phenols [2, 2006.01]
 31/055 • • • the aromatic ring being substituted by halogen [2, 2006.01]
 31/06 • • • the aromatic ring being substituted by nitro groups [2, 2006.01]
 31/065 • • Diphenyl-substituted acyclic alcohols [2, 2006.01]
 31/07 • • Retinol compounds, e.g. vitamin A (retinoic acids A61K 31/203) [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/075 • Ethers or acetals [2, 2006.01]
 31/08 • • acyclic, e.g. paraformaldehyde [2, 2006.01]
 31/085 • • having an ether linkage to aromatic ring nuclear carbon [2, 2006.01]
 31/09 • • • having two or more such linkages [2, 2006.01]
 31/095 • Sulfur, selenium or tellurium compounds, e.g. thiols [2, 2006.01]
 31/10 • • Sulfides; Sulfoxides; Sulfones [2, 2006.01]

- 31/105 • • Persulfides (thiuram disulfides A61K 31/145; thiosulfonic acids A61K 31/185) [2, 2006.01]
 31/11 • Aldehydes [2, 2006.01]
 31/115 • • Formaldehyde [2, 2006.01]
 31/12 • Ketones [2, 2006.01]
 31/121 • • acyclic [7, 2006.01]
 31/122 • • having the oxygen atom directly attached to a ring, e.g. quinones, vitamin K₁, anthralin [7, 2006.01]
 31/125 • • • Camphor; Nuclear substituted derivatives thereof [2, 2006.01]
 31/13 • Amines, e.g. amantadine (A61K 31/04 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
 31/131 • • acyclic [7, 2006.01]
 31/132 • • having two or more amino groups, e.g. spermidine, putrescine [7, 2006.01]
 31/133 • • having hydroxy groups, e.g. sphingosine [7, 2006.01]
 31/135 • • having aromatic rings, e.g. methadone [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/136 • • • having the amino group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. benzeneamine [7, 2006.01]
 31/137 • • • Arylalkylamines, e.g. amphetamine, epinephrine, salbutamol, ephedrine [7, 2006.01]
 31/138 • • • Aryloxyalkylamines, e.g. propranolol, tamoxifen, phenoxybenzamine (atenolol A61K 31/165; pindolol A61K 31/404; timolol A61K 31/5377) [7, 2006.01]
 31/14 • • Quaternary ammonium compounds, e.g. edrophonium, choline (betaines A61K 31/205) [2, 2006.01]
 31/145 • • having sulfur atoms, e.g. thiurams ($\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{S}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$ or $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{S}-\text{S}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$); Sulfinylamines ($-\text{N}=\text{SO}$); Sulfonylamines ($-\text{N}=\text{SO}_2$) (isothioureas A61K 31/155) [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/15 • • Oximes ($\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{O}-$); Hydrazines ($\text{N}-\text{N}$); Hydrazones ($\text{N}=\text{N}=\text{N}$) [2, 2006.01]
 31/155 • • Amidines ($-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{N})-\text{N}$), e.g. guanidine ($\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{C}(=\text{NH})-\text{NH}_2$), isourea ($\text{HN}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{NH}_2$), isothiourea ($\text{HN}=\text{C}(\text{SH})-\text{NH}_2$) [2, 2006.01]
 31/16 • Amides, e.g. hydroxamic acids [2, 2006.01]
 31/164 • • of a carboxylic acid with an aminoalcohol, e.g. ceramides [7, 2006.01]
 31/165 • • having aromatic rings, e.g. colchicine, atenolol, progabide [2, 2006.01]
 31/166 • • • having the carbon atom of a carboxamide group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. procainamide, procarbazine, metoclopramide, labetalol [7, 2006.01]
 31/167 • • • having the nitrogen atom of a carboxamide group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. lidocaine, paracetamol [7, 2006.01]
 31/17 • • having the group $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}$ or $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$, e.g. urea, thiourea, carmustine (isoureas, isothioureas A61K 31/155; sulfonylureas A61K 31/64) [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/175 • • • having the group $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}$, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}$ or $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}=\text{N}$, e.g. carbonohydrazides, carbazones, semicarbazides, semicarbazones; Thioanalogues thereof [2, 7, 2006.01]
 31/18 • • Sulfonamides (compounds containing a para-N-benzene-sulfonyl-N-group A61K 31/63) [2, 2006.01]

- 31/185 • Acids; Anhydrides, halides or salts thereof, e.g. sulfur acids, imidic, hydrazonic or hydroximic acids (hydroxamic acids A61K 31/16; peroxy acids A61K 31/327) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/19 • • Carboxylic acids, e.g. valproic acid (salicylic acid A61K 31/60) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/191 • • • Acyclic acids having two or more hydroxy groups, e.g. gluconic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/192 • • • having aromatic groups, e.g. sulindac, 2-aryl-propionic acids, ethacrynic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/194 • • • having two or more carboxyl groups, e.g. succinic, maleic or phthalic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/195 • • • having an amino group [2, 7, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- In this group, the expression "amino group" also covers "acyl amino group".
- 31/196 • • • • the amino group being directly attached to a ring, e.g. anthranilic acid, mefenamic acid, diclofenac, chlorambucil [7, 2006.01]
- 31/197 • • • • the amino and the carboxyl groups being attached to the same acyclic carbon chain, e.g. gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), beta-alanine, epsilon-aminocaproic acid, pantothenic acid (carnitine A61K 31/205) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/198 • • • • Alpha-amino acids, e.g. alanine, edetic acid (EDTA) (betaine A61K 31/205; proline A61K 31/401; tryptophan A61K 31/405; histidine A61K 31/4172; peptides not degraded to individual amino acids A61K 38/00) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/20 • • • having a carboxyl group bound to an acyclic chain of seven or more carbon atoms, e.g. stearic, palmitic or arachidic acid [2, 2006.01]
- 31/201 • • • • having one or two double bonds, e.g. oleic or linoleic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/202 • • • • having three or more double bonds, e.g. linolenic acid (eicosanoids, e.g. leukotrienes, A61K 31/557) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/203 • • • • Retinoic acids [7, 2006.01]
- 31/205 • • Amine addition salts of organic acids; Inner quaternary ammonium salts, e.g. betaine, carnitine [2, 2006.01]
- 31/21 • Esters, e.g. nitroglycerine, selenocyanates [2, 2006.01]
- 31/215 • • of carboxylic acids [2, 2006.01]
- 31/216 • • • of acids having aromatic rings, e.g. benactizyne, clofibrate [7, 2006.01]
- 31/22 • • • of acyclic acids, e.g. pravastatin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/221 • • • • with compounds having an amino group, e.g. acetylcholine, acetylcarnitine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/222 • • • • with compounds having aromatic groups, e.g. dipivefrine, ibopamine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/223 • • • • of alpha-amino acids [7, 2006.01]
- 31/225 • • • • Polycarboxylic acids [2, 2006.01]
- 31/23 • • • • of acids having a carboxyl group bound to a chain of seven or more carbon atoms [2, 2006.01]
- 31/231 • • • • • having one or two double bonds [7, 2006.01]
- 31/232 • • • • • having three or more double bonds, e.g. etretinate [7, 2006.01]
- 31/235 • • • having an aromatic ring attached to a carboxyl group [2, 2006.01]
- 31/24 • • • • having an amino or nitro group [2, 2006.01]
- 31/245 • • • • • Amino benzoic acid types, e.g. procaine, novocaine (salicylic acid esters A61K 31/60) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/25 • • • with polyoxyalkylated alcohols, e.g. esters of polyethylene glycol [2, 2006.01]
- 31/255 • • • of sulfoxy acids or sulfur analogues thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 31/26 • • Cyanate or isocyanate esters; Thiocyanate or isothiocyanate esters [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/265 • • • of carbonic, thiocarbonic or thiocarboxylic acids, e.g. thioacetic acid, xanthogenic acid, trithiocarbonic acid [2, 2006.01]
- 31/27 • • • of carbamic or thiocarbamic acids, e.g. meprobamate, carbachol, neostigmine [2, 2006.01]
- 31/275 • Nitriles; Isonitriles [2, 2006.01]
- 31/277 • • having a ring, e.g. verapamil [7, 2006.01]
- 31/28 • Compounds containing heavy metals [2, 2006.01]
- 31/282 • • Platinum compounds [7, 2006.01]
- 31/285 • • Arsenic compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/29 • • Antimony or bismuth compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/295 • • Iron group metal compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/30 • • Copper compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/305 • • Mercury compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/31 • • • containing nitrogen [2, 2006.01]
- 31/315 • • Zinc compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/32 • • Tin compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/325 • Carbamic acids; Thiocarbamic acids; Anhydrides or salts thereof (thiurams A61K 31/145) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/327 • Peroxy compounds, e.g. hydroperoxides, peroxides, peroxy acids [7, 2006.01]
- 31/33 • Heterocyclic compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/335 • • having oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. fungichromin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/336 • • • having three-membered rings, e.g. oxirane, fumagillin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/337 • • • having four-membered rings, e.g. taxol [7, 2006.01]
- 31/34 • • • having five-membered rings with one oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. isosorbide [2, 2006.01]
- 31/341 • • • • not condensed with another ring, e.g. ranitidine, furosemide, bufetolol, muscarine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/343 • • • • condensed with a carbocyclic ring, e.g. coumaran, bufuralol, befunolol, clobenfurol, amiodarone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/345 • • • • Nitrofurans (nitrofurantoin A61K 31/4178) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/35 • • • having six-membered rings with one oxygen as the only ring hetero atom [2, 2006.01]
- 31/351 • • • • not condensed with another ring [7, 2006.01]
- 31/352 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. cannabinoids, methantheine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/353 • • • • 3,4-Dihydrobenzopyrans, e.g. chroman, catechin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/355 • • • • • Tocopherols, e.g. vitamin E [2, 2006.01]
- 31/357 • • • having two or more oxygen atoms in the same ring, e.g. crown ethers, guanadrel [7, 2006.01]
- 31/36 • • • • Compounds containing methylenedioxyphenyl groups, e.g. sesamin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/365 • • • Lactones [2, 2006.01]
- 31/366 • • • • having six-membered rings, e.g. delta-lactones [7, 2006.01]
- 31/37 • • • • • Coumarins, e.g. psoralen [2, 2006.01]

- 31/375 • • • • Ascorbic acid, i.e. vitamin C; Salts thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 31/38 • • having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [2, 2006.01]
- 31/381 • • • having five-membered rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/382 • • • having six-membered rings, e.g. thioxanthenes (thiothixene A61K 31/496) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/385 • • • having two or more sulfur atoms in the same ring [2, 2006.01]
- 31/39 • • • having oxygen atoms in the same ring [2, 2006.01]
- 31/395 • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. guanethidine or rifamycins [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/396 • • • having three-membered rings, e.g. aziridine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/397 • • • having four-membered rings, e.g. azetidine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/40 • • • having five-membered rings with one nitrogen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. sulphiride, succinimide, tolmetin, bufloxedil [2, 2006.01]
- 31/401 • • • • Proline; Derivatives thereof, e.g. captopril [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4015 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. piracetam, ethosuximide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/402 • • • • 1-aryl-substituted, e.g. piretanide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4025 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. cromakalim [7, 2006.01]
- 31/403 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. carbazole [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4035 • • • • Isoindoles, e.g. phthalimide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/404 • • • • Indoles, e.g. pindolol [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4045 • • • • • Indole-alkylamines; Amides thereof, e.g. serotonin, melatonin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/405 • • • • • Indole-alkanecarboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. tryptophan, indomethacin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/407 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. ketorolac, physostigmine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/409 • • • • having four such rings, e.g. porphine derivatives, bilirubin, biliverdine (hemin, hematin A61K 31/555) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/41 • • • having five-membered rings with two or more ring hetero atoms, at least one of which is nitrogen, e.g. tetrazole [2, 2006.01]
- 31/415 • • • • 1,2-Diazoles [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/4152 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. antipyrine, phenylbutazone, sulfinpyrazone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4155 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/416 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. indazole [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4162 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4164 • • • • 1,3-Diazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4166 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. phenytoin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4168 • • • • having a nitrogen atom attached in position 2, e.g. clonidine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/417 • • • • Imidazole-alkylamines, e.g. histamine, phentolamine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4172 • • • • Imidazole-alkanecarboxylic acids, e.g. histidine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4174 • • • • Arylalkylimidazoles, e.g. oxymetazolin, naphazoline, miconazole [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4178 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. pilocarpine, nitrofurantoin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4184 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. benzimidazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4188 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. biotin, sorbinil [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4192 • • • • 1,2,3-Triazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4196 • • • • 1,2,4-Triazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/42 • • • • Oxazoles [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/421 • • • • 1,3-Oxazoles, e.g. pemoline, trimethadione [7, 2006.01]
- 31/422 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/423 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/424 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. clavulanic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4245 • • • • Oxadiazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/425 • • • • Thiazoles [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/426 • • • • 1,3-Thiazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/427 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/428 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/429 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/43 • • • • • Compounds containing 4-thia-1-azabicyclo [3.2.0] heptane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula
- , e.g. penicillins, penems [2, 6, 2006.01]
- 31/431 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. ticarcillin, azlocillin, oxacillin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/433 • • • • Thiadiazoles [7, 2006.01]
- 31/435 • • • having six-membered rings with one nitrogen as the only ring hetero atom [2, 2006.01]
- 31/4353 • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4355 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a five-membered ring having oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/436 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a six-membered ring having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. rapamycin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4365 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system having sulfur as a ring hetero atom, e.g. ticlopidine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/437 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a five-membered ring having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. indolizine, beta-carboline [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4375 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a six-membered ring having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. quinolizines, naphthyridines, berberine, vincamine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/438 • • • • the ring being spiro-condensed with carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]

- 31/439 the ring forming part of a bridged ring system, e.g. quinuclidine (8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octanes A61K 31/46) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/44 Non-condensed pyridines; Hydrogenated derivatives thereof [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/4402 only substituted in position 2, e.g. pheniramine, bisacodyl [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4406 only substituted in position 3, e.g. zimeldine (nicotinic acid A61K 31/455) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4409 only substituted in position 4, e.g. isoniazid, iproniazid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4412 having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4415 Pyridoxine, i.e. vitamin B₆ (pyridoxal phosphate A61K 31/675) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4418 having a carbocyclic ring directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cyproheptadine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4422 1,4-Dihydropyridines, e.g. nifedipine, nicardipine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4425 Pyridinium derivatives, e.g. pralidoxime, pyridostigmine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4427 containing further heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/443 containing a five-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4433 containing a six-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4436 containing a heterocyclic ring having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4439 containing a five-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. omeprazole (nicotine A61K 31/465) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/444 containing a six-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. amrinone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/445 Non-condensed piperidines, e.g. piperocaine [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/4453 only substituted in position 1, e.g. propipocaine, dipiperodon [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4458 only substituted in position 2, e.g. methylphenidate [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4462 only substituted in position 3 [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4465 only substituted in position 4 [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4468 having a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 4, e.g. clebopride, fentanyl [7, 2006.01]
- 31/45 having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cycloheximide [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/451 having a carbocyclic ring directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. glutethimide, meperidine, loperamide, phencyclidine, piminodine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4515 having a butyrophenone group in position 1, e.g. haloperidol (pipamperone A61K 31/4545) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/452 Piperidinium derivatives (pancuronium A61K 31/58) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4523 containing further heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4525 containing a five-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/453 containing a six-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4535 containing a heterocyclic ring having sulfur as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pizotifen [7, 2006.01]
- 31/454 containing a five-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pimozone, domperidone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4545 containing a six-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pipamperone, anabasine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/455 Nicotinic acid, i.e. niacin; Derivatives thereof, e.g. esters, amides [2, 2006.01]
- 31/46 8-Azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane; Derivatives thereof, e.g. atropine, cocaine [2, 2006.01]
- 31/465 Nicotine; Derivatives thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 31/47 Quinolines; Isoquinolines [2, 2006.01]
- 31/4704 2-Quinolines, e.g. carbostyryl [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4706 4-Aminoquinolines; 8-Aminoquinolines, e.g. chloroquine, primaquine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4709 Non-condensed quinolines containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/472 Non-condensed isoquinolines, e.g. papaverine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4725 containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/473 ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. acridines, phenanthridines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4738 ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4741 condensed with ring systems having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. tubocuraran derivatives, noscapine, bicuculline [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4743 condensed with ring systems having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4745 condensed with ring systems having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. phenanthrolines (yohimbine derivatives, vinblastine A61K 31/475; ergoline derivatives A61K 31/48) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4747 spiro-condensed [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4748 forming part of bridged ring systems (strychnine A61K 31/475; morphinan derivatives A61K 31/485) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/475 having an indole ring, e.g. yohimbine, reserpine, strychnine, vinblastine (vincamine A61K 31/4375) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/48 Ergoline derivatives, e.g. lysergic acid, ergotamine [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/485 Morphinan derivatives, e.g. morphine, codeine [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/49 Cinchonan derivatives, e.g. quinine [2, 7, 2006.01]

- 31/495 • • • having six-membered rings with two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, e.g. piperazine (A61K 31/48 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/496 • • • • Non-condensed piperazines containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. rifampin, thiothixene [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4965 • • • • Non-condensed pyrazines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/497 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/498 • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. quinoxaline, phenazine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4985 • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/499 • • • • Spiro-condensed pyrazines or piperazines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/4995 • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/50 • • • • Pyridazines; Hydrogenated pyridazines [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/501 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/502 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. cinnoline, phthalazine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5025 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/503 • • • • • spiro-condensed [7, 2006.01]
- 31/504 • • • • • forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/505 • • • • Pyrimidines; Hydrogenated pyrimidines, e.g. trimethoprim [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/506 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/51 • • • • • Thiamines, e.g. vitamin B₁ [2, 2006.01]
- 31/513 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cytosine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/515 • • • • • Barbituric acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. sodium pentobarbital [2, 2006.01]
- 31/517 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. quinazoline, perimidine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/519 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/52 • • • • • Purines, e.g. adenine [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/522 • • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. hypoxanthine, guanine, acyclovir [7, 2006.01]
- 31/525 • • • • • Isoalloxazines, e.g. riboflavins, vitamin B₂ [2, 2006.01]
- 31/527 • • • • • spiro-condensed [7, 2006.01]
- 31/529 • • • • • forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/53 • • • • having six-membered rings with three nitrogens as the only ring hetero atoms, e.g. chlorazaniol, melamine (melarsoprol A61K 31/555) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/535 • • • • having six-membered rings with at least one nitrogen and at least one oxygen as the ring hetero atoms, e.g. 1,2-oxazines [2, 2006.01]
- 31/5355 • • • • • Non-condensed oxazines containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/536 • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5365 • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/537 • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5375 • • • • • 1,4-Oxazines, e.g. morpholine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5377 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. timolol [7, 2006.01]
- 31/538 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5383 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5386 • • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/539 • • • • • having two or more oxygen atoms in the same ring, e.g. dioxazines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5395 • • • • • having two or more nitrogen atoms in the same ring, e.g. oxadiazines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/54 • • • • having six-membered rings with at least one nitrogen and at least one sulfur as the ring hetero atoms, e.g. sulthiame [2, 2006.01]
- 31/541 • • • • • Non-condensed thiazines containing further heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5415 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. phenothiazine, chlorpromazine, piroxicam [7, 2006.01]
- 31/542 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/545 • • • • • Compounds containing 5-thia-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system
- of the formula C1CN2C(S1)CC2, e.g. cephalosporins, cefaclor, cephalaxine [2, 6, 2006.01]
- 31/546 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. cephalothin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/547 • • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7, 2006.01]
- 31/548 • • • • • having two or more sulfur atoms in the same ring [7, 2006.01]
- 31/549 • • • • • having two or more nitrogen atoms in the same ring, e.g. hydrochlorothiazide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/55 • • • • having seven-membered rings, e.g. azelastine, pentylenetetrazole [2, 2006.01]
- 31/551 • • • • • having two nitrogens as ring hetero atoms, e.g. clozapine, dilazep [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5513 • • • • • 1,4-Benzodiazepines, e.g. diazepam [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5517 • • • • • condensed with five-membered rings having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. imidazobenzodiazepines, triazolam [7, 2006.01]
- 31/553 • • • • • having at least one nitrogen and at least one oxygen as ring hetero atoms, e.g. loxapine, staurosporine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/554 • • • • • having at least one nitrogen and at least one sulfur as ring hetero atoms, e.g. clothiapine, diltiazem [7, 2006.01]
- 31/555 • • • • • containing heavy metals, e.g. hemin, hematin, melarsoprol [2, 2006.01]
- 31/557 • • • • • Eicosanoids, e.g. leukotrienes [3, 7, 2006.01]

- 31/5575 • • having a cyclopentane ring, e.g. prostaglandin E₂, prostaglandin F_{2- α} [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5578 • • having a pentalene ring system, e.g. carbacyclin, iloprost [7, 2006.01]
- 31/558 • • having heterocyclic rings containing oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. thromboxanes [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5585 • • • having five-membered rings containing oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. prostacyclin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/559 • • having heterocyclic rings containing hetero atoms other than oxygen [7, 2006.01]
- 31/56 • Compounds containing cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene ring systems; Derivatives thereof, e.g. steroids [4, 7, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- Attention is drawn to Note (1) following the title of subclass C07J, which explains what is covered by the term "steroids".
- 31/565 • • not substituted in position 17 beta by a carbon atom, e.g. oestrane, oestradiol [2, 2006.01]
- 31/566 • • • having an oxo group in position 17, e.g. oestrone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/567 • • • substituted in position 17 alpha, e.g. mestranol, norethandrolone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/568 • • • substituted in positions 10 and 13 by a chain having at least one carbon atom, e.g. androstane, testosterone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/5685 • • • • having an oxo group in position 17, e.g. androsterone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/569 • • • • substituted in position 17 alpha, e.g. ethisterone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/57 • • substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of two carbon atoms, e.g. pregnane or progesterone [2, 2006.01]
- 31/573 • • • substituted in position 21, e.g. cortisone, dexamethasone, prednisone or aldosterone [7, 2006.01]
- 31/575 • • substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of three or more carbon atoms, e.g. cholane, cholestane, ergosterol, sitosterol [2, 2006.01]
- 31/58 • • containing heterocyclic rings, e.g. danazol, stanozolol, pancuronium or digitogenin (digitoxin A61K 31/704) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/585 • • • containing lactone rings, e.g. oxandrolone, bufalin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/59 • Compounds containing 9,10-seco-cyclopenta[a]hydro-phenanthrene ring systems [2, 2006.01]
- 31/592 • • 9,10-Secoergostane derivatives, e.g. ergocalciferol, vitamin D₂ [7, 2006.01]
- 31/593 • • 9,10-Secocholestane derivatives, e.g. cholecalciferol, vitamin D₃ [7, 2006.01]
- 31/60 • Salicylic acid; Derivatives thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 31/603 • • having further aromatic rings, e.g. diflunisal [7, 2006.01]
- 31/606 • • having amino groups [7, 2006.01]
- 31/609 • • Amides, e.g. salicylamide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/612 • • having the hydroxy group in position 2 esterified, e.g. salicylsulfuric acid (fosfosal A61K 31/661) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/616 • • • by carboxylic acids, e.g. acetylsalicylic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/618 • • having the carboxyl group in position 1 esterified, e.g. salsalate [7, 2006.01]
- 31/621 • • • having the hydroxy group in position 2 esterified, e.g. benorylate [7, 2006.01]
- 31/625 • • having heterocyclic substituents, e.g. 4-salicyloylmorpholine (sulfasalazine A61K 31/635) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/63 • Compounds containing para-N-benzene- sulfonyl-N-groups, e.g. sulfanilamide, p-nitrobenzenesulfonohydrazide [2, 2006.01]
- 31/635 • • having a heterocyclic ring, e.g. sulfadiazine [2, 2006.01]
- 31/64 • Sulfonylureas, e.g. glibenclamide, tolbutamide, chlorpropamide [2, 2006.01]
- 31/65 • Tetracyclines [2, 2006.01]
- 31/655 • Azo (—N=N—), diazo (=N_2), azoxy (:N—O—N: or N(=O)—N:), azido (—N_3) or diazoamino (—N=N—N:) compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/66 • Phosphorus compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/661 • • Phosphorus acids or esters thereof not having P—C bonds, e.g. fosfosal, dichlorvos, malathion [7, 2006.01]
- 31/6615 • • • Compounds having two or more esterified phosphorus acid groups, e.g. inositol triphosphate, phytic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/662 • • Phosphorus acids or esters thereof having P—C bonds, e.g. foscarnet, trichlorfon [7, 2006.01]
- 31/663 • • • Compounds having two or more phosphorus acid groups or esters thereof, e.g. clodronic acid, pamidronic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/664 • • Amides of phosphorus acids [7, 2006.01]
- 31/665 • • having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. fosfomycin [2, 2006.01]
- 31/67 • • having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [2, 2006.01]
- 31/675 • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pyridoxal phosphate [2, 2006.01]
- 31/683 • • Diesters of a phosphorus acid with two hydroxy compounds, e.g. phosphatidylinositols [7, 2006.01]
- 31/685 • • • one of the hydroxy compounds having nitrogen atoms, e.g. phosphatidylserine, lecithin [2, 7, 2006.01]
- 31/688 • • • both hydroxy compounds having nitrogen atoms, e.g. sphingomyelins [7, 2006.01]
- 31/69 • Boron compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/695 • Silicon compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 31/70 • Carbohydrates; Sugars; Derivatives thereof (sorbitol A61K 31/047) [2, 7, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- In this group, the expressions are used with the meanings indicated in Note (3) following the title of subclass C07H.
- 31/7004 • • Monosaccharides having only carbon, hydrogen and oxygen atoms [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7008 • • Compounds having an amino group directly attached to a carbon atom of the saccharide radical, e.g. D-galactosamine, ranimustine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7012 • • Compounds having a free or esterified carboxyl group attached, directly or through a carbon chain, to a carbon atom of the saccharide radical, e.g. glucuronic acid, neuraminic acid (gluconic acid A61K 31/191; ascorbic acid A61K 31/375) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7016 • • Disaccharides, e.g. lactose, lactulose (lactobionic acid A61K 31/7032) [7, 2006.01]

- 31/702 • • Oligosaccharides, i.e. having three to five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7024 • • Esters of saccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7028 • • Compounds having saccharide radicals attached to non-saccharide compounds by glycosidic linkages [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7032 • • • attached to a polyol, i.e. compounds having two or more free or esterified hydroxy groups, including the hydroxy group involved in the glycosidic linkage, e.g. monoglucosyl-diacylglycerides, lactobionic acid, gangliosides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7034 • • • attached to a carbocyclic compound, e.g. phloridzin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7036 • • • • having at least one amino group directly attached to the carbocyclic ring, e.g. streptomycin, gentamycin, amikacin, validamycin, fortimicins [7, 2006.01]
- 31/704 • • • • attached to a condensed carbocyclic ring system, e.g. semnosides, thiocolchicosides, escin, daunorubicin, digitoxin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7042 • • Compounds having saccharide radicals and heterocyclic rings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7048 • • • having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. leucoglucosan, hesperidin, erythromycin, nystatin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7052 • • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. nucleosides, nucleotides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7056 • • • containing five-membered rings with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/706 • • • • containing six-membered rings with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7064 • • • • • containing condensed or non-condensed pyrimidines [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7068 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the pyrimidine ring, e.g. cytidine, cytidylic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7072 • • • • • • having two oxo groups directly attached to the pyrimidine ring, e.g. uridine, uridylic acid, thymidine, zidovudine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7076 • • • • • • containing purines, e.g. adenosine, adenylic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/708 • • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the purine ring system, e.g. guanosine, guanylic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7084 • • Compounds having two nucleosides or nucleotides, e.g. nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide, flavine-adenine dinucleotide [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7088 • • Compounds having three or more nucleosides or nucleotides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7105 • • • Natural ribonucleic acids, i.e. containing only riboses attached to adenine, guanine, cytosine or uracil and having 3'-5' phosphodiester links [7, 2006.01]
- 31/711 • • • Natural deoxyribonucleic acids, i.e. containing only 2'-deoxyriboses attached to adenine, guanine, cytosine or thymine and having 3'-5' phosphodiester links [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7115 • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified bases, i.e. other than adenine, guanine, cytosine, uracil or thymine [7, 2006.01]
- 31/712 • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified sugars, i.e. other than ribose or 2'-deoxyribose [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7125 • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified internucleoside linkage, i.e. other than 3'-5' phosphodiester [7, 2006.01]
- 31/713 • • • Double-stranded nucleic acids or oligonucleotides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/7135 • • Compounds containing heavy metals [7, 2006.01]
- 31/714 • • • Cobalamins, e.g. cyanocobalamin, vitamin B₁₂ [7, 2006.01]
- 31/715 • • Polysaccharides, i.e. having more than five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages; Derivatives thereof, e.g. ethers, esters [2, 2006.01]
- 31/716 • • • Glucans [7, 2006.01]
- 31/717 • • • • Celluloses [7, 2006.01]
- 31/718 • • • • Starch or degraded starch, e.g. amylose, amylopectin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/719 • • • • Pullulans [7, 2006.01]
- 31/721 • • • • Dextrans [7, 2006.01]
- 31/722 • • • • Chitin; Chitosan [7, 2006.01]
- 31/723 • • • • Xanthans [7, 2006.01]
- 31/724 • • • • Cyclodextrins [7, 2006.01]
- 31/726 • • • Glycosaminoglycans, i.e. mucopolysaccharides (chondroitin sulfate, dermatan sulfate A61K 31/737) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/727 • • • • Heparin; Heparan [7, 2006.01]
- 31/728 • • • • Hyaluronic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/729 • • • Agar; Agarose; Agaropectin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/731 • • • Carrageenans [7, 2006.01]
- 31/732 • • • Pectin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/733 • • • Fructosans, e.g. inulin [7, 2006.01]
- 31/734 • • • Alginic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 31/736 • • • Glucomannans or galactomannans, e.g. locust bean gum, guar gum [7, 2006.01]
- 31/737 • • • Sulfated polysaccharides, e.g. chondroitin sulfate, dermatan sulfate (A61K 31/727 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 31/738 • • • Cross-linked polysaccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/739 • • • Lipopolysaccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 31/74 • Synthetic polymeric materials [2, 2006.01]
- 31/745 • • Polymers of hydrocarbons [2, 2006.01]
- 31/75 • • • of ethene [2, 2006.01]
- 31/755 • • Polymers containing halogen [2, 2006.01]
- 31/76 • • • of vinyl chloride [2, 2006.01]
- 31/765 • • Polymers containing oxygen [2, 2006.01]
- 31/77 • • • of oxiranes [2, 2006.01]
- 31/775 • • • Phenolic resins [2, 2006.01]
- 31/78 • • • of acrylic acid or derivatives thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 31/785 • • Polymers containing nitrogen [2, 2006.01]
- 31/787 • • • containing heterocyclic rings having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7, 2006.01]
- 31/79 • • • • Polymers of vinyl pyrrolidone [2, 2006.01]
- 31/795 • • Polymers containing sulfur [2, 2006.01]
- 31/80 • • Polymers containing hetero atoms not provided for in groups A61K 31/755-A61K 31/795 [2, 2006.01]
- 33/00 Medicinal preparations containing inorganic active ingredients [2, 2006.01]**
- 33/02 • Ammonia; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • Sulfur, selenium or tellurium; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]

- 33/06 • Aluminium, calcium or magnesium; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • Oxides; Hydroxides [2, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • • Carbonates; Bicarbonates [2, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • Magnesium silicate [2, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • Alkali metal chlorides; Alkaline earth metal chlorides [2, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • Fluorine compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • Iodine; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/20 • Elemental chlorine; Inorganic compounds releasing chlorine [2, 2006.01]
- 33/22 • Boron compounds [2, 2006.01]
- 33/24 • Heavy metals; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01, 2019.01]
- 33/241 • • Lead; Compounds thereof [2019.01]
- 33/242 • • Gold; Compounds thereof [2019.01]
- 33/243 • • Platinum; Compounds thereof [2019.01]
- 33/244 • • Lanthanides; Compounds thereof (medicinal preparations containing radioactive lanthanides for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* A61K 51/00) [2019.01]
- 33/245 • • Bismuth; Compounds thereof [2019.01]
- 33/26 • • Iron; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/28 • • Mercury; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/30 • • Zinc; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/32 • • Manganese; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/34 • • Copper; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/36 • • Arsenic; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/38 • • Silver; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/40 • Peroxides [2, 2006.01]
- 33/42 • Phosphorus; Compounds thereof [2, 2006.01]
- 33/44 • Elemental carbon, e.g. charcoal, carbon black [2, 2006.01]
- 35/00 Medicinal preparations containing materials or reaction products thereof with undetermined constitution [2, 2006.01]**
- Note(s) [2006.01, 2015.01]**
1. In this group, classification is made for each active component or material. For each active component or material, classification is then made in the last appropriate place.
 2. When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.
- 35/02 • from inanimate materials (carbon A61K 33/44) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/04 • • Tars; Bitumens; Mineral oils; Ammonium bituminosulfonate [2, 2006.01]
- 35/06 • • • Mineral oils, e.g. paraffinic oils or aromatic oils based on aromatic hydrocarbons [2, 2006.01]
- 35/08 • • Mineral waters; Seawater [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/10 • • Peat; Amber; Turf; Humus [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/12 • Materials from mammals; Compositions comprising non-specified tissues or cells; Compositions comprising non-embryonic stem cells; Genetically modified cells (vaccines or medicinal preparations containing antigens or antibodies A61K 39/00) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- Note(s) [2015.01]**
- If the cells are characterised, classification is made in the group covering the corresponding tissue or tissue of origin.
- 35/13 • • Tumour cells, irrespective of tissue of origin (tumour vaccines A61K 39/00) [2015.01]
- 35/14 • • Blood; Artificial blood (perfluorocarbons A61K 31/02; umbilical cord blood A61K 35/51; haemoglobin A61K 38/42) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/15 • • • Cells of the myeloid line, e.g. granulocytes, basophils, eosinophils, neutrophils, leucocytes, monocytes, macrophages or mast cells; Myeloid precursor cells; Antigen-presenting cells, e.g. dendritic cells (presenting a specific antigen A61K 39/00; therapeutic combinations of antibodies, or fragments thereof, and blood-derived cells A61K 39/00) [2015.01]
- 35/16 • • • Blood plasma; Blood serum (umbilical cord blood A61K 35/51) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/17 • • • Lymphocytes; B-cells; T-cells; Natural killer cells; Interferon-activated or cytokine-activated lymphocytes (when activated by a specific antigen A61K 39/00) [2015.01]
- 35/18 • • • Erythrocytes (haemoglobin A61K 38/42) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/19 • • • Platelets; Megacaryocytes [2015.01]
- 35/20 • • Milk; Whey; Colostrum [2, 2006.01]
- 35/22 • • Urine; Urinary tract, e.g. kidney or bladder; Intraglomerular mesangial cells; Renal mesenchymal cells; Adrenal gland [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/24 • • Mucus; Mucous glands; Bursa; Synovial fluid; Arthral fluid; Excreta; Spinal fluid (saliva A61K 35/38) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/26 • • Lymph; Lymph nodes; Thymus; Spleen; Splenocytes; Thymocytes [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/28 • • Bone marrow; Haematopoietic stem cells; Mesenchymal stem cells of any origin, e.g. adipose-derived stem cells [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/30 • • Nerves; Brain; Eyes; Corneal cells; Cerebrospinal fluid; Neuronal stem cells; Neuronal precursor cells; Glial cells; Oligodendrocytes; Schwann cells; Astroglia; Astrocytes; Choroid plexus; Spinal cord tissue [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/32 • • Bones; Osteocytes; Osteoblasts; Tendons; Tenocytes; Teeth; Odontoblasts; Cartilage; Chondrocytes; Synovial membrane [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/33 • • Fibroblasts [2015.01]
- 35/34 • • Muscles; Smooth muscle cells; Heart; Cardiac stem cells; Myoblasts; Myocytes; Cardiomyocytes (vascular smooth muscle A61K 35/44) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/35 • • Fat tissue; Adipocytes; Stromal cells; Connective tissues (adipose-derived stem cells A61K 35/28; collagen A61K 38/39) [2015.01]
- 35/36 • • Skin; Hair; Nails; Sebaceous glands; Cerumen; Epidermis; Epithelial cells; Keratinocytes; Langerhans cells; Ectodermal cells (islets of Langerhans A61K 35/39) [4, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/37 • • Digestive system [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/38 • • • Stomach; Intestine; Goblet cells; Oral mucosa; Saliva [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/39 • • • Pancreas; Islets of Langerhans (Langerhans cells of epidermis A61K 35/36) [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/407 • • • Liver; Hepatocytes [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/413 • • • Gall bladder; Bile [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/42 • • Respiratory system, e.g. lungs, bronchi or lung cells [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]

A61K

- 35/44 • • Vessels; Vascular smooth muscle cells; Endothelial cells; Endothelial progenitor cells [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/48 • • Reproductive organs [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/50 • • • Placenta; Placental stem cells; Amniotic fluid; Amnion; Amniotic stem cells [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/51 • • • Umbilical cord; Umbilical cord blood; Umbilical stem cells [2015.01]
- 35/52 • • • Sperm; Prostate; Seminal fluid; Leydig cells of testes [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/54 • • • Ovaries; Ova; Ovules; Embryos; Foetal cells; Germ cells [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/545 • • • • Embryonic stem cells; Pluripotent stem cells; Induced pluripotent stem cells; Uncharacterised stem cells [2015.01]
- 35/55 • • Glands not provided for in groups A61K 35/22-A61K 35/545, e.g. thyroids, parathyroids or pineal glands [3, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/56 • Materials from animals other than mammals [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/57 • • Birds; Materials from birds, e.g. eggs, feathers, egg white, egg yolk or endothelium corneum gigeriae galli [2015.01]
- 35/58 • • Reptiles (antigens from snakes A61K 39/38) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/583 • • • Snakes; Lizards, e.g. chameleons (therapeutic use of a snake venom protein A61K 38/00) [2015.01]
- 35/586 • • • Turtles; Tortoises, e.g. terrapins [2015.01]
- 35/60 • • Fish, e.g. seahorses; Fish eggs [2, 2006.01]
- 35/612 • • Crustaceans, e.g. crabs, lobsters, shrimps, krill or crayfish; Barnacles [2015.01]
- 35/614 • • Cnidaria, e.g. sea anemones, corals, coral animals or jellyfish [2015.01]
- 35/616 • • Echinodermata, e.g. starfish, sea cucumbers or sea urchins [2015.01]
- 35/618 • • Molluscs, e.g. fresh-water molluscs, oysters, clams, squids, octopus, cuttlefish, snails or slugs [2015.01]
- 35/62 • • Leeches; Worms, e.g. cestodes, tapeworms, nematodes, roundworms, earth worms, ascarids, filarias, hookworms, trichinella or taenia [2, 2006.01]
- 35/63 • • Arthropods (aquatic crustaceans A61K 35/612) [2015.01]
- 35/64 • • • Insects, e.g. bees, wasps or fleas [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/644 • • • • Beeswax; Propolis; Royal jelly; Honey [2015.01]
- 35/646 • • • Arachnids, e.g. spiders, scorpions, ticks or mites [2015.01]
- 35/648 • • • Myriapods, e.g. centipedes or millipedes [2015.01]
- 35/65 • • Amphibians, e.g. toads, frogs, salamanders or newts [2015.01]
- 35/655 • • Aquatic animals other than those covered by groups A61K 35/57-A61K 35/65 [2015.01]
- 35/66 • Microorganisms or materials therefrom (fungi, yeasts or candida A61K 36/06) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/68 • • Protozoa, e.g. flagella, amoebas, sporozoans, plasmodium or toxoplasma [2, 2006.01]
- 35/74 • • Bacteria (therapeutic use of a bacterial protein A61K 38/00) [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/741 • • • Probiotics (probiotic yeast, e.g. saccharomyces A61K 36/06) [2015.01]
- 35/742 • • • • Spore-forming bacteria, e.g. Bacillus coagulans, Bacillus subtilis, clostridium or Lactobacillus sporogenes [2015.01]
- 35/744 • • • • Lactic acid bacteria, e.g. enterococci, pediococci, lactococci, streptococci or leuconostocs [2015.01]
- 35/745 • • • • • Bifidobacteria [2015.01]
- 35/747 • • • • • Lactobacilli, e.g. L. acidophilus or L. brevis [2015.01]
- 35/748 • • • Cyanobacteria, i.e. blue-green bacteria or blue-green algae, e.g. spirulina (algae, microalgae or microphytes A61K 36/02) [2015.01]
- 35/76 • • Viruses; Subviral particles; Bacteriophages [2, 2006.01, 2015.01]
- 35/761 • • • Adenovirus [2015.01]
- 35/763 • • • Herpes virus [2015.01]
- 35/765 • • • Reovirus; Rotavirus [2015.01]
- 35/766 • • • Rhabdovirus, e.g. vesicular stomatitis virus [2015.01]
- 35/768 • • • Oncolytic viruses not provided for in groups A61K 35/761-A61K 35/766 [2015.01]
- 36/00 Medicinal preparations of undetermined constitution containing material from algae, lichens, fungi or plants, or derivatives thereof, e.g. traditional herbal medicines [2006.01]**
- Note(s) [2006.01]**
1. In this group, common names of plants, where given, are presented in brackets following their corresponding Latin names.
 2. In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes A61K 125/00-A61K 135/00.
- 36/02 • Algae [2006.01]
- 36/03 • • Phaeophycota or phaeophyta (brown algae), e.g. Fucus [2006.01]
- 36/04 • • Rhodophycota or rhodophyta (red algae), e.g. Porphyra [2006.01]
- 36/05 • • Chlorophycota or chlorophyta (green algae), e.g. Chlorella [2006.01]
- 36/06 • Fungi, e.g. yeasts [2006.01]
- 36/062 • • Ascomycota [2006.01]
- 36/064 • • • Saccharomycetales, e.g. baker's yeast [2006.01]
- 36/066 • • • Clavicipitaceae [2006.01]
- 36/068 • • • • Cordyceps [2006.01]
- 36/07 • • Basidiomycota, e.g. Cryptococcus [2006.01]
- 36/074 • • • Ganoderma [2006.01]
- 36/076 • • • Poria [2006.01]
- 36/09 • Lichens [2006.01]
- 36/10 • Bryophyta (mosses) [2006.01]
- 36/11 • Pteridophyta or Filicophyta (ferns) [2006.01]
- 36/12 • • Filicopsida or Pteridopsida [2006.01]
- 36/126 • • • Drynaria [2006.01]
- 36/13 • Coniferophyta (gymnosperms) [2006.01]
- 36/14 • • Cupressaceae (Cypress family), e.g. juniper or cypress [2006.01]
- 36/15 • • Pinaceae (Pine family), e.g. pine or cedar [2006.01]
- 36/16 • Ginkgophyta, e.g. Ginkgoaceae (Ginkgo family) [2006.01]
- 36/17 • Gnetophyta, e.g. Ephedraceae (Mormon-tea family) [2006.01]
- 36/18 • Magnoliophyta (angiosperms) [2006.01]
- 36/185 • • Magnoliopsida (dicotyledons) [2006.01]
- 36/19 • • • Acanthaceae (Acanthus family) [2006.01]
- 36/195 • • • • Strobilanthes [2006.01]

- 36/20 • • • Aceraceae (Maple family) [2006.01]
- 36/21 • • • Amaranthaceae (Amaranth family), e.g. pigweed, rockwort or globe amaranth [2006.01]
- 36/22 • • • Anacardiaceae (Sumac family), e.g. smoketree, sumac or poison oak [2006.01]
- 36/23 • • • Apiaceae or Umbelliferae (Carrot family), e.g. dill, chervil, coriander or cumin [2006.01]
- 36/232 • • • • Angelica [2006.01]
- 36/233 • • • • Bupleurum [2006.01]
- 36/234 • • • • Cnidium (snowparsley) [2006.01]
- 36/235 • • • • Foeniculum (fennel) [2006.01]
- 36/236 • • • • Ligusticum (licorice-root) [2006.01]
- 36/237 • • • • Notopterygium [2006.01]
- 36/238 • • • • Saposhnikovia [2006.01]
- 36/24 • • • Apocynaceae (Dogbane family), e.g. plumeria or periwinkle [2006.01]
- 36/25 • • • Araliaceae (Ginseng family), e.g. ivy, aralia, schefflera or tetrapanax [2006.01]
- 36/254 • • • • Acanthopanax or Eleutherococcus [2006.01]
- 36/258 • • • • Panax (ginseng) [2006.01]
- 36/26 • • • Aristolochiaceae (Birthwort family), e.g. heartleaf [2006.01]
- 36/264 • • • • Aristolochia (Dutchman's pipe) [2006.01]
- 36/268 • • • • Asarum (wild ginger) [2006.01]
- 36/27 • • • Asclepiadaceae (Milkweed family), e.g. hoya [2006.01]
- 36/28 • • • Asteraceae or Compositae (Aster or Sunflower family), e.g. chamomile, feverfew, yarrow or echinacea [2006.01]
- 36/282 • • • • Artemisia, e.g. wormwood or sagebrush [2006.01]
- 36/284 • • • • Atractylodes [2006.01]
- 36/285 • • • • Aucklandia [2006.01]
- 36/286 • • • • Carthamus (distaff thistle) [2006.01]
- 36/287 • • • • Chrysanthemum, e.g. daisy [2006.01]
- 36/288 • • • • Taraxacum (dandelion) [2006.01]
- 36/289 • • • • Vladimiria [2006.01]
- 36/29 • • • Berberidaceae (Barberry family), e.g. barberry, cohosh or mayapple [2006.01]
- 36/296 • • • • Epimedium [2006.01]
- 36/30 • • • Boraginaceae (Borage family), e.g. comfrey, lungwort or forget-me-not [2006.01]
- 36/31 • • • Brassicaceae or Cruciferae (Mustard family), e.g. broccoli, cabbage or kohlrabi [2006.01]
- 36/315 • • • • Isatis, e.g. Dyer's woad [2006.01]
- 36/32 • • • Burseraceae (Frankincense family) [2006.01]
- 36/324 • • • • Boswellia, e.g. frankincense [2006.01]
- 36/328 • • • • Commiphora, e.g. mecca myrrh or balm of Gilead [2006.01]
- 36/33 • • • Cactaceae (Cactus family), e.g. pricklypear or Cereus [2006.01]
- 36/34 • • • Campanulaceae (Bellflower family) [2006.01]
- 36/342 • • • • Adenophora [2006.01]
- 36/344 • • • • Codonopsis [2006.01]
- 36/346 • • • • Platycodon [2006.01]
- 36/35 • • • Caprifoliaceae (Honeysuckle family) [2006.01]
- 36/355 • • • • Lonicera (honeysuckle) [2006.01]
- 36/36 • • • Caryophyllaceae (Pink family), e.g. babysbreath or soapwort [2006.01]
- 36/37 • • • Celastraceae (Staff-tree or Bittersweet family), e.g. tripterygium or spindletree [2006.01]
- 36/38 • • • Clusiaceae, Hypericaceae or Guttiferae (Hypericum or Mangosteen family), e.g. common St. Johnswort [2006.01]
- 36/39 • • • Convolvulaceae (Morning-glory family), e.g. bindweed [2006.01]
- 36/40 • • • Cornaceae (Dogwood family) [2006.01]
- 36/41 • • • Crassulaceae (Stoncrop family) [2006.01]
- 36/42 • • • Cucurbitaceae (Cucumber family) [2006.01]
- 36/424 • • • • Gynostemma [2006.01]
- 36/428 • • • • Trichosanthes [2006.01]
- 36/43 • • • Cuscutaceae (Dodder family), e.g. Cuscuta epithimum or greater dodder [2006.01]
- 36/44 • • • Ebenaceae (Ebony family), e.g. persimmon [2006.01]
- 36/45 • • • Ericaceae or Vacciniaceae (Heath or Blueberry family), e.g. blueberry, cranberry or bilberry [2006.01]
- 36/46 • • • Eucommiaceae (Eucommia family), e.g. hardy rubber tree [2006.01]
- 36/47 • • • Euphorbiaceae (Spurge family), e.g. Ricinus (castorbean) [2006.01]
- 36/48 • • • Fabaceae or Leguminosae (Pea or Legume family); Caesalpiniaceae; Mimosaceae; Papilionaceae [2006.01]
- 36/481 • • • • Astragalus (milkvetch) [2006.01]
- 36/482 • • • • Cassia, e.g. golden shower tree [2006.01]
- 36/483 • • • • Gleditsia (locust) [2006.01]
- 36/484 • • • • Glycyrrhiza (licorice) [2006.01]
- 36/485 • • • • Gueldenstaedtia [2006.01]
- 36/486 • • • • Millettia [2006.01]
- 36/487 • • • • Psoralea [2006.01]
- 36/488 • • • • Pueraria (kudzu) [2006.01]
- 36/489 • • • • Sophora, e.g. necklacepod or mamani [2006.01]
- 36/49 • • • Fagaceae (Beech family), e.g. oak or chestnut [2006.01]
- 36/50 • • • Fumariaceae (Fumitory family), e.g. bleeding heart [2006.01]
- 36/505 • • • • Corydalis [2006.01]
- 36/51 • • • Gentianaceae (Gentian family) [2006.01]
- 36/515 • • • • Gentiana [2006.01]
- 36/52 • • • Juglandaceae (Walnut family) [2006.01]
- 36/53 • • • Lamiaceae or Labiatae (Mint family), e.g. thyme, rosemary or lavender [2006.01]
- 36/532 • • • • Agastache, e.g. giant hyssop [2006.01]
- 36/533 • • • • Leonurus (motherwort) [2006.01]
- 36/534 • • • • Mentha (mint) [2006.01]
- 36/535 • • • • Perilla (beefsteak plant) [2006.01]
- 36/536 • • • • Prunella or Brunella (selfheal) [2006.01]
- 36/537 • • • • Salvia (sage) [2006.01]
- 36/538 • • • • Schizonepeta [2006.01]
- 36/539 • • • • Scutellaria (skullcap) [2006.01]
- 36/54 • • • Lauraceae (Laurel family), e.g. cinnamon or sassafras [2006.01]
- 36/55 • • • Linaceae (Flax family), e.g. Linum [2006.01]
- 36/56 • • • Loganiaceae (Logania family), e.g. trumpetflower or pinkroot [2006.01]
- 36/57 • • • Magnoliaceae (Magnolia family) [2006.01]
- 36/575 • • • • Magnolia [2006.01]
- 36/58 • • • Meliaceae (Chinaberry or Mahogany family), e.g. Azadirachta (neem) [2006.01]
- 36/59 • • • Menispermaceae (Moonseed family), e.g. hyperbaena or coralbead [2006.01]
- 36/60 • • • Moraceae (Mulberry family), e.g. breadfruit or fig [2006.01]
- 36/605 • • • • Morus (mulberry) [2006.01]
- 36/61 • • • Myrtaceae (Myrtle family), e.g. teatree or eucalyptus [2006.01]

- 36/62 • • • Nymphaeaceae (Water-lily family) [2006.01]
- 36/63 • • • Oleaceae (Olive family), e.g. jasmine, lilac or ash tree [2006.01]
- 36/634 • • • • Forsythia [2006.01]
- 36/638 • • • • Ligustrum, e.g. Chinese privet [2006.01]
- 36/64 • • • Orobanchaceae (Broom-rape family) [2006.01]
- 36/65 • • • Paeoniaceae (Peony family), e.g. Chinese peony [2006.01]
- 36/66 • • • Papaveraceae (Poppy family), e.g. bloodroot [2006.01]
- 36/67 • • • Piperaceae (Pepper family), e.g. Jamaican pepper or kava [2006.01]
- 36/68 • • • Plantaginaceae (Plantain Family) [2006.01]
- 36/69 • • • Polygalaceae (Milkwort family) [2006.01]
- 36/70 • • • Polygonaceae (Buckwheat family), e.g. spineflower or dock [2006.01]
- 36/704 • • • Polygonum, e.g. knotweed [2006.01]
- 36/708 • • • Rheum (rhubarb) [2006.01]
- 36/71 • • • Ranunculaceae (Buttercup family), e.g. larkspur, hepatica, hydrastis, columbine or goldenseal [2006.01]
- 36/714 • • • • Aconitum (monkshood) [2006.01]
- 36/716 • • • • Clematis (leather flower) [2006.01]
- 36/718 • • • • Coptis (goldthread) [2006.01]
- 36/72 • • • Rhamnaceae (Buckthorn family), e.g. buckthorn, chewstick or umbrella-tree [2006.01]
- 36/725 • • • • Ziziphus, e.g. jujube [2006.01]
- 36/73 • • • Rosaceae (Rose family), e.g. strawberry, chokeberry, blackberry, pear or firethorn [2006.01]
- 36/732 • • • • Chaenomeles, e.g. flowering quince [2006.01]
- 36/734 • • • • Crataegus (hawthorn) [2006.01]
- 36/736 • • • • Prunus, e.g. plum, cherry, peach, apricot or almond [2006.01]
- 36/738 • • • • Rosa (rose) [2006.01]
- 36/739 • • • • Sanguisorba (burnet) [2006.01]
- 36/74 • • • Rubiaceae (Madder family) [2006.01]
- 36/744 • • • • Gardenia [2006.01]
- 36/746 • • • • Morinda [2006.01]
- 36/748 • • • • Oldenlandia or Hedyotis [2006.01]
- 36/75 • • • Rutaceae (Rue family) [2006.01]
- 36/752 • • • • Citrus, e.g. lime, orange or lemon [2006.01]
- 36/754 • • • • Evodia [2006.01]
- 36/756 • • • • Phellodendron, e.g. corktree [2006.01]
- 36/758 • • • • Zanthoxylum, e.g. pricklyash [2006.01]
- 36/76 • • • Salicaceae (Willow family), e.g. poplar [2006.01]
- 36/77 • • • Sapindaceae (Soapberry family), e.g. lychee or soapberry [2006.01]
- 36/78 • • • Saururaceae (Lizard's-tail family) [2006.01]
- 36/79 • • • Schisandraceae (Schisandra family) [2006.01]
- 36/80 • • • Scrophulariaceae (Figwort family) [2006.01]
- 36/804 • • • • Rehmannia [2006.01]
- 36/808 • • • • Scrophularia (figwort) [2006.01]
- 36/81 • • • Solanaceae (Potato family), e.g. tobacco, nightshade, tomato, belladonna, capsicum or jimsonweed [2006.01]
- 36/815 • • • • Lycium (desert-thorn) [2006.01]
- 36/82 • • • Theaceae (Tea family), e.g. camellia [2006.01]
- 36/83 • • • Thymelaeaceae (Mezereum family), e.g. leatherwood or false ohelo [2006.01]
- 36/835 • • • • Aquilaria [2006.01]
- 36/84 • • • Valerianaceae (Valerian family), e.g. valerian [2006.01]
- 36/85 • • • Verbenaceae (Verbena family) [2006.01]
- 36/855 • • • • Clerodendrum, e.g. glorybower [2006.01]
- 36/86 • • • Violaceae (Violet family) [2006.01]
- 36/87 • • • Vitaceae or Ampelidaceae (Vine or Grape family), e.g. wine grapes, muscadine or peppervine [2006.01]
- 36/88 • • Liliopsida (monocotyledons) [2006.01]
- 36/882 • • • Acoraceae (Calamus family), e.g. sweetflag or Acorus calamus [2006.01]
- 36/884 • • • Alismataceae (Water-plantain family) [2006.01]
- 36/886 • • • Aloeaceae (Aloe family), e.g. aloe vera [2006.01]
- 36/888 • • • Araceae (Arum family), e.g. caladium, calla lily or skunk cabbage [2006.01]
- 36/8884 • • • • Arisaema, e.g. Jack in the pulpit [2006.01]
- 36/8888 • • • • Pinellia [2006.01]
- 36/889 • • • Arecaceae, Palmae or Palmaceae (Palm family), e.g. date or coconut palm or palmetto [2006.01]
- 36/8895 • • • • Calamus, e.g. rattan [2006.01]
- 36/89 • • • Cyperaceae (Sedge family) [2006.01]
- 36/8905 • • • • Cyperus (flatsedge) [2006.01]
- 36/894 • • • Dioscoreaceae (Yam family) [2006.01]
- 36/8945 • • • • Dioscorea, e.g. yam, Chinese yam or water yam [2006.01]
- 36/896 • • • Liliaceae (Lily family), e.g. daylily, plantain lily, Hyacinth or narcissus [2006.01]
- 36/8962 • • • • Allium, e.g. garden onion, leek, garlic or chives [2006.01]
- 36/8964 • • • • Anemarrhena [2006.01]
- 36/8965 • • • • Asparagus, e.g. garden asparagus or asparagus fern [2006.01]
- 36/8966 • • • • Fritillaria, e.g. checker lily or mission bells [2006.01]
- 36/8967 • • • • Lilium, e.g. tiger lily or Easter lily [2006.01]
- 36/8968 • • • • Ophiopogon (Lilyturf) [2006.01]
- 36/8969 • • • • Polygonatum (Solomon's seal) [2006.01]
- 36/898 • • • Orchidaceae (Orchid family) [2006.01]
- 36/8984 • • • • Dendrobium [2006.01]
- 36/8988 • • • • Gastrodia [2006.01]
- 36/899 • • • Poaceae or Gramineae (Grass family), e.g. bamboo, corn or sugar cane [2006.01]
- 36/8994 • • • • Coix (Job's tears) [2006.01]
- 36/8998 • • • • Hordeum (barley) [2006.01]
- 36/90 • • • Smilacaceae (Catbrier family), e.g. greenbrier or sarsaparilla [2006.01]
- 36/902 • • • Sparganiaceae (Bur-reed family) [2006.01]
- 36/904 • • • Stemonaceae (Stemona family), e.g. croomia [2006.01]
- 36/906 • • • Zingiberaceae (Ginger family) [2006.01]
- 36/9062 • • • • Alpinia, e.g. red ginger or galangal [2006.01]
- 36/9064 • • • • Amomum, e.g. round cardamom [2006.01]
- 36/9066 • • • • Curcuma, e.g. common turmeric, East Indian arrowroot or mango ginger [2006.01]
- 36/9068 • • • • Zingiber, e.g. garden ginger [2006.01]

<p>38/00 Medicinal preparations containing peptides (peptides containing beta-lactam rings A61K 31/00; cyclic dipeptides not having in their molecule any other peptide link than those which form their ring, e.g. piperazine-2,5-diones, A61K 31/00; ergoline-based peptides A61K 31/48; containing macromolecular compounds having statistically distributed amino acid units A61K 31/74; medicinal preparations containing antigens or antibodies A61K 39/00; medicinal preparations characterised by the non-active ingredients, e.g. peptides as drug carriers, A61K 47/00) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>Note(s) [6]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The terms or expressions used in this group follow exactly the definitions given in Note (1) following the title of subclass C07K. 2. Preparations containing fragments of peptides or peptides modified by removal or addition of amino acids, by substitution of amino acids by others, or by combination of these modifications are classified as the preparations containing parent peptides. However, preparations containing fragments of peptides having only four or less amino acids are also classified in groups A61K 38/05-A61K 38/07. 3. Preparations containing peptides prepared by recombinant DNA technology are not classified according to the host, but according to the original peptide expressed, e.g. preparations containing HIV peptide expressed in <i>E. coli</i> are classified with the preparations containing HIV peptides. 	<p>38/01 • Hydrolysed proteins; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/02 • Peptides of undefined number of amino acids; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/03 • Peptides having up to 20 amino acids in an undefined or only partially defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/04 • Peptides having up to 20 amino acids in a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof (gastrins A61K 38/16, somatostatins A61K 38/31, melanotropins A61K 38/34) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/05 • • Dipeptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/06 • • Tripeptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/07 • • Tetrapeptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/08 • • Peptides having 5 to 11 amino acids [6, 2006.01, 2019.01]</p> <p>38/09 • • • Luteinising hormone-releasing hormone [LHRH]; Related peptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/095 • • • Oxytocins; Vasopressins; Related peptides [2019.01]</p> <p>38/10 • • Peptides having 12 to 20 amino acids [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/12 • • Cyclic peptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/13 • • • Cyclosporins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/14 • • Peptides containing saccharide radicals; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/15 • • Depsipeptides; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/16 • Peptides having more than 20 amino acids; Gastrins; Somatostatins; Melanotropins; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/17 • • from animals; from humans [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/18 • • • Growth factors; Growth regulators [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/19 • • • Cytokines; Lymphokines; Interferons [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/20 • • • • Interleukins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/21 • • • • Interferons [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/22 • • • Hormones (derived from pro-opiomelanocortin, pro-enkephalin or pro-dynorphin A61K 38/33, e.g. corticotropin A61K 38/35) [6, 2006.01]</p>	<p>38/23 • • • • Calcitonins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/24 • • • • Follicle-stimulating hormone [FSH]; Chorionic gonadotropins, e.g. HCG; Luteinising hormone [LH]; Thyroid-stimulating hormone [TSH] [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/25 • • • • Growth hormone-releasing factor [GH-RF] (Somatoliberin) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/26 • • • • Glucagons [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/27 • • • • Growth hormone [GH] (Somatotropin) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/28 • • • • Insulins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/29 • • • • Parathyroid hormone (parathormone); Parathyroid hormone-related peptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/30 • • • • Insulin-like growth factors (Somatomedins), e.g. IGF-1, IGF-2 [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/31 • • • • Somatostatins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/32 • • • • Thymopoiens [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/33 • • • derived from pro-opiomelanocortin, pro-enkephalin or pro-dynorphin [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/34 • • • • Melanocyte stimulating hormone [MSH], e.g. alpha- or beta-melanotropin [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/35 • • • • Corticotropin [ACTH] [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/36 • • • Blood coagulation or fibrinolysis factors [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/37 • • • • Factors VIII [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/38 • • • • Albumins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/39 • • • • Connective tissue peptides, e.g. collagen, elastin, laminin, fibronectin, vitronectin, cold insoluble globulin [CIG] [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/40 • • • • Transferrins, e.g. lactoferrins, ovotransferrins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/41 • • Porphyrin- or corrin-ring-containing peptides [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/42 • • • Haemoglobins; Myoglobins [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/43 • • Enzymes; Proenzymes; Derivatives thereof [6, 2006.01]</p>	<p>Note(s) [6]</p> <p>In this group:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • proenzymes are classified with the corresponding enzymes; • enzymes are generally categorised according to the "Nomenclature and Classification of Enzymes" of the International Commission of Enzymes. Where appropriate, this designation appears in the subgroups below in parenthesis. <p>38/44 • • • • Oxidoreductases (1) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/45 • • • • Transferases (2) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/46 • • • • Hydrolases (3) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/47 • • • • acting on glycosyl compounds (3.2), e.g. cellulases, lactases [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/48 • • • • acting on peptide bonds (3.4) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/49 • • • • • Urokinase; Tissue plasminogen activator [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/50 • • • • acting on carbon-nitrogen bonds, other than peptide bonds (3.5), e.g. asparaginase [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/51 • • • • Lyases (4) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/52 • • • • Isomerases (5) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/53 • • • • Ligases (6) [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/54 • • • • Mixtures of enzymes or proenzymes covered by more than a single one of groups A61K 38/44-A61K 38/46 or A61K 38/51-A61K 38/53 [6, 2006.01]</p> <p>38/55 • • Protease inhibitors [6, 2006.01]</p>
---	--	---	---

- 38/56 • • • from plants [6, 2006.01]
 38/57 • • • from animals; from humans [6, 2006.01]
 38/58 • • • from leeches, e.g. hirudin, eglin [6, 2006.01]
- 39/00 Medicinal preparations containing antigens or antibodies** (materials for immunoassay G01N 33/53) [2, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [3]**
1. Preparation of antigen or antibody compositions is also classified in subclass C12N, if the step of cultivating the microorganism is of interest.
 2. Groups A61K 39/002-A61K 39/12 cover preparations containing protozoa, bacteria, viruses, or subunits thereof, e.g. membrane parts.
- 39/002 • Protozoa antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/005 • • Trypanosoma antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/008 • • Leishmania antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/012 • • Coccidia antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/015 • • Hemosporidia antigens, e.g. Plasmodium antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/018 • • • Babesia antigens, e.g. Theileria antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/02 • Bacterial antigens [2, 2006.01]
 39/04 • • Mycobacterium, e.g. Mycobacterium tuberculosis [2, 3, 2006.01]
 39/05 • • Corynebacterium; Propionibacterium [3, 2006.01]
 39/07 • • Bacillus [3, 2006.01]
 39/08 • • Clostridium, e.g. Clostridium tetani [2, 2006.01]
 39/085 • • Staphylococcus [3, 2006.01]
 39/09 • • Streptococcus [3, 2006.01]
 39/095 • • Neisseria [3, 2006.01]
 39/10 • • Brucella; Bordetella, e.g. Bordetella pertussis [2, 3, 2006.01]
 39/102 • • Pasteurella; Haemophilus [3, 2006.01]
 39/104 • • Pseudomonas [3, 2006.01]
 39/106 • • Vibrio; Campylobacter [3, 2006.01]
 39/108 • • Escherichia; Klebsiella [3, 2006.01]
 39/112 • • Salmonella; Shigella [3, 2006.01]
 39/114 • • Fusobacterium [3, 2006.01]
 39/116 • • Polyvalent bacterial antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/118 • • Chlamydiaceae, e.g. Chlamydia trachomatis or Chlamydia psittaci [3, 2006.01]
 39/12 • Viral antigens [2, 2006.01]
 39/125 • • Picornaviridae, e.g. calicivirus [3, 2006.01]
 39/13 • • • Poliovirus [3, 2006.01]
 39/135 • • • Foot-and-mouth disease virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/145 • • Orthomyxoviridae, e.g. influenza virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/15 • • Reoviridae, e.g. calf diarrhea virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/155 • • Paramyxoviridae, e.g. parainfluenza virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/165 • • • Mumps or measles virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/17 • • • Newcastle disease virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/175 • • • Canine distemper virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/187 • • Hog cholera virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/193 • • Equine encephalomyelitis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/20 • • Rubella virus [2, 2006.01]
 39/205 • • Rhabdoviridae, e.g. rabies virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/21 • • Retroviridae, e.g. equine infectious anemia virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/215 • • Coronaviridae, e.g. avian infectious bronchitis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/225 • • • Porcine transmissible gastroenteritis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/23 • • Parvoviridae, e.g. feline panleukopenia virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/235 • • Adenoviridae [3, 2006.01]
 39/245 • • Herpetoviridae, e.g. herpes simplex virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/25 • • • Varicella-zoster virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/255 • • • Marek's disease virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/265 • • • Infectious rhinotracheitis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/27 • • • Equine rhinopneumonitis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/275 • • Poxviridae, e.g. avipoxvirus [3, 2006.01]
 39/285 • • • Vaccinia virus or variola virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/29 • • Hepatitis virus [3, 2006.01]
 39/295 • • Polyvalent viral antigens (vaccinia virus or variola virus A61K 39/285); Mixtures of viral and bacterial antigens [3, 2006.01]
 39/35 • Allergens [3, 2006.01]
 39/36 • • from pollen [2, 3, 2006.01]
 39/38 • Antigen from snakes [2, 2006.01]
 39/385 • Haptens or antigens, bound to carriers [3, 2006.01]
 39/39 • characterised by the immunostimulating additives, e.g. chemical adjuvants [3, 2006.01]
 39/395 • Antibodies (agglutinins A61K 38/36); Immunoglobulins; Immune serum, e.g. antilymphocytic serum [3, 2006.01]
 39/40 • • bacterial [2, 3, 2006.01]
 39/42 • • viral [2, 3, 2006.01]
 39/44 • • Antibodies bound to carriers [2, 3, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Medicinal preparations obtained by treating materials with wave energy or particle radiation** [2, 2006.01, 2020.01]
- 41/10 • Inactivation or decontamination of a medicinal preparation prior to administration to an animal or a person [2020.01]
 41/13 • • by ultrasonic waves [2020.01]
 41/17 • • by ultraviolet [UV] or infrared [IR] light, X-rays or gamma rays [2020.01]
- 45/00 Medicinal preparations containing active ingredients not provided for in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 41/00** [2, 6, 2006.01]
- 45/06 • Mixtures of active ingredients without chemical characterisation, e.g. antiphlogistics and cardiaca [2, 2006.01]
 45/08 • Mixtures of an active ingredient and an auxiliary substance neither being chemically characterised, e.g. antihistaminicum and surface active substance [2, 2006.01]
- 47/00 Medicinal preparations characterised by the non-active ingredients used, e.g. carriers or inert additives; Targeting or modifying agents chemically bound to the active ingredient** [2, 2006.01]
- 47/02 • Inorganic compounds [5, 2006.01]
 47/04 • • Non-metals; Compounds thereof [5, 2006.01]
 47/06 • Organic compounds, e.g. natural or synthetic hydrocarbons, polyolefins, mineral oil, petrolatum or ozokerite [5, 2006.01]
 47/08 • • containing oxygen [5, 2006.01]
 47/10 • • • Alcohols; Phenols; Salts thereof, e.g. glycerol; Polyethylene glycols [PEG]; Poloxamers; PEG/POE alkyl ethers [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
 47/12 • • • Carboxylic acids; Salts or anhydrides thereof [5, 2006.01]

- 47/14 • • • Esters of carboxylic acids, e.g. fatty acid monoglycerides, medium-chain triglycerides, parabens or PEG fatty acid esters [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
- 47/16 • • containing nitrogen [5, 2006.01]
- 47/18 • • • Amines; Amides; Ureas; Quaternary ammonium compounds; Amino acids; Oligopeptides having up to five amino acids [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
- 47/20 • • containing sulfur, e.g. dimethyl sulfoxide [DMSO], docosate, sodium lauryl sulfate or aminosulfonic acids [5, 2006.01]
- 47/22 • • Heterocyclic compounds, e.g. ascorbic acid, tocopherol or pyrrolidones [5, 2006.01]
- 47/24 • • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, halogen, nitrogen or sulfur, e.g. cyclomethicone or phospholipids [5, 2006.01]
- 47/26 • • Carbohydrates, e.g. sugar alcohols, amino sugars, nucleic acids, mono-, di- or oligo-saccharides; Derivatives thereof, e.g. polysorbates, sorbitan fatty acid esters or glycyrrhizin [5, 2006.01]
- 47/28 • • Steroids, e.g. cholesterol, bile acids or glycyrrhetic acid [5, 2006.01]
- 47/30 • Macromolecular organic or inorganic compounds, e.g. inorganic polyphosphates [5, 2006.01]
- 47/32 • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, e.g. carbomers [5, 2006.01]
- 47/34 • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, e.g. polyesters, polyamino acids, polysiloxanes, polyphosphazines, copolymers of polyalkylene glycol or poloxamers (A61K 47/10 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
- 47/36 • • Polysaccharides; Derivatives thereof, e.g. gums, starch, alginate, dextrin, hyaluronic acid, chitosan, inulin, agar or pectin [5, 2006.01]
- 47/38 • • • Cellulose; Derivatives thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 47/40 • • • Cyclodextrins; Derivatives thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 47/42 • • Proteins; Polypeptides; Degradation products thereof; Derivatives thereof, e.g. albumin, gelatin or zein (oligopeptides having up to five amino acids A61K 47/18; polyamino acids A61K 47/34) [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
- 47/44 • Oils, fats or waxes according to two or more groups of A61K 47/02-A61K 47/42; Natural or modified natural oils, fats or waxes, e.g. castor oil, polyethoxylated castor oil, montan wax, lignite, shellac, rosin, beeswax or lanolin (synthetic glycerides, e.g. medium-chain triglycerides, A61K 47/14) [5, 2006.01, 2017.01]
- 47/46 • Ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof, e.g. skin, bone, milk, cotton fibre, eggshell, oxgall or plant extracts [5, 2006.01]
- 47/50 • the non-active ingredient being chemically bound to the active ingredient, e.g. polymer-drug conjugates [2017.01]
- 47/51 • • the non-active ingredient being a modifying agent [2017.01]
- 47/52 • • • the modifying agent being an inorganic compound, e.g. an inorganic ion that is complexed with the active ingredient [2017.01]
- 47/54 • • • the modifying agent being an organic compound [2017.01]
- 47/55 • • • • the modifying agent being also a pharmacologically or therapeutically active agent, i.e. the entire conjugate being a codrug, i.e. a dimer, oligomer or polymer of pharmacologically or therapeutically active compounds [2017.01]
- 47/56 • • • the modifying agent being an organic macromolecular compound, e.g. an oligomeric, polymeric or dendrimeric molecule [2017.01]
- 47/58 • • • • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, e.g. poly[meth]acrylate, polyacrylamide, polystyrene, polyvinylpyrrolidone, polyvinylalcohol or polystyrene sulfonic acid resin [2017.01]
- 47/59 • • • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, e.g. polyureas or polyurethanes [2017.01]
- 47/60 • • • • • the organic macromolecular compound being a polyoxyalkylene oligomer, polymer or dendrimer, e.g. PEG, PPG, PEO or polyglycerol [2017.01]
- 47/61 • • • • the organic macromolecular compound being a polysaccharide or a derivative thereof [2017.01]
- 47/62 • • • the modifying agent being a protein, peptide or polyamino acid [2017.01]
- 47/64 • • • • Drug-peptide, drug-protein or drug-polyamino acid conjugates, i.e. the modifying agent being a peptide, protein or polyamino acid which is covalently bonded or complexed to a therapeutically active agent (peptidic linkers A61K 47/65) [2017.01]
- 47/65 • • • • Peptidic linkers, binders or spacers, e.g. peptidic enzyme-labile linkers [2017.01]
- 47/66 • • • • the modifying agent being a pre-targeting system involving a peptide or protein for targeting specific cells [2017.01]
- 47/68 • • • the modifying agent being an antibody, an immunoglobulin or a fragment thereof, e.g. an Fc-fragment [2017.01]
- 47/69 • • the conjugate being characterised by physical or galenical forms, e.g. emulsion, particle, inclusion complex, stent or kit [2017.01]
- 48/00 Medicinal preparations containing genetic material which is inserted into cells of the living body to treat genetic diseases; Gene therapy [5, 2006.01]**
- 49/00 Preparations for testing *in vivo* [3, 2006.01]**
- 49/04 • X-ray contrast preparations [3, 2006.01]
- 49/06 • Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) contrast preparations; Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) contrast preparations [7, 2006.01]
- 49/08 • • characterised by the carrier [7, 2006.01]
- 49/10 • • • Organic compounds [7, 2006.01]
- 49/12 • • • • Macromolecular compounds [7, 2006.01]
- 49/14 • • • • Peptides, e.g. proteins [7, 2006.01]
- 49/16 • • • • • Antibodies; Immunoglobulins; Fragments thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 49/18 • • characterised by a special physical form, e.g. emulsions, microcapsules, liposomes [7, 2006.01]
- 49/20 • • containing free radicals [7, 2006.01]
- 49/22 • Echographic preparations; Ultrasound imaging preparations [7, 2006.01]

A61K

50/00 Electrically conductive preparations for use in therapy or testing *in vivo*, e.g. conductive adhesives or gels to be used with electrodes for electrocardiography (ECG) or for transcutaneous drug administration [2006.01]

51/00 Preparations containing radioactive substances for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* [6, 2006.01]

Note(s) [6]

In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of groups A61K 101/00-A61K 103/00.

- 51/02 • characterised by the carrier [6, 2006.01]
- 51/04 • • Organic compounds [6, 2006.01]
- 51/06 • • • Macromolecular compounds [6, 2006.01]
- 51/08 • • • Peptides, e.g. proteins [6, 2006.01]
- 51/10 • • • • Antibodies or immunoglobulins; Fragments thereof [6, 2006.01]
- 51/12 • characterised by a special physical form, e.g. emulsion, microcapsules, liposomes [6, 2006.01]

Indexing scheme associated with group A61K 51/00, relating to the nature of the radioactive substance. [6]

101/00 Radioactive non-metals [6, 2006.01]

- 101/02 • Halogens [6, 2006.01]

A61L METHODS OR APPARATUS FOR STERILISING MATERIALS OR OBJECTS IN GENERAL; DISINFECTION, STERILISATION, OR DEODORISATION OF AIR; CHEMICAL ASPECTS OF BANDAGES, DRESSINGS, ABSORBENT PADS, OR SURGICAL ARTICLES; MATERIALS FOR BANDAGES, DRESSINGS, ABSORBENT PADS, OR SURGICAL ARTICLES (preservation of bodies or disinfecting characterised by the agent employed A01N; preserving, e.g. sterilising, food or foodstuffs A23; preparations for medical, dental or toilet purposes A61K) [4]

Subclass index

DISINFECTION OR STERILISATION OF MATERIALS

- General methods or apparatus.....2/00
- of air.....9/00
- of refuse.....11/00
- of contact lenses.....12/00

MATERIALS FOR

- Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads.....15/00
- sutures or for ligaturing blood vessels.....17/00
- liquid bandages.....26/00
- prostheses or for coating prostheses.....27/00
- colostomy devices.....28/00
- catheters or for coating catheters.....29/00
- other surgical articles.....31/00

SURGICAL ADHESIVES OR CEMENTS; ADHESIVES FOR COLOSTOMY DEVICES.....24/00

ANTITHROMBOGENIC TREATMENT OF SURGICAL ARTICLES.....33/00

Disinfection or sterilising

Note(s) [7]

In groups A61L 2/00-A61L 12/00, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of group A61L 101/00.

103/00 Radioactive metals [6, 2006.01]

- 103/10 • Technetium; Rhenium [6, 2006.01]
- 103/20 • Indium [6, 2006.01]
- 103/30 • Rare earths [6, 2006.01]
- 103/32 • • Yttrium [6, 2006.01]
- 103/34 • • Gadolinium [6, 2006.01]
- 103/36 • • Ytterbium [6, 2006.01]
- 103/40 • Actinides [6, 2006.01]

Indexing scheme associated with group A61K 36/00, relating to plant parts with medicinal activity. [2006.01]

125/00 Containing or obtained from roots, bulbs, tubers, corms or rhizomes [2006.01]

127/00 Containing or obtained from leaves [2006.01]

129/00 Containing or obtained from bark [2006.01]

131/00 Containing or obtained from seeds, nuts, fruits or grains [2006.01]

133/00 Containing or obtained from flowers or blossoms [2006.01]

135/00 Containing or obtained from stems, stalks, branches, twigs or shoots [2006.01]

2/00 Methods or apparatus for disinfecting or sterilising materials or objects other than foodstuffs or contact lenses; Accessories therefor (atomisers for disinfecting agents A61M; sterilisation of packages or package contents in association with packaging B65B 55/00; treatment of water, waste water, sewage or sludge C02F; disinfecting paper D21H 21/36; disinfecting devices for water closets E03D; articles having provision for disinfection, see the relevant subclasses for these articles, e.g. H04R 1/12) [3, 5, 7, 2006.01]

- 2/02 • using physical phenomena [3, 2006.01]

- 2/025 • • Ultrasonics [7, 2006.01]

- 2/03 • • Electric current, e.g. electrolysis [7, 2006.01]
- 2/04 • • Heat (A61L 2/08 takes precedence) [3, 2006.01]
- 2/06 • • • Hot gas [3, 2006.01]
- 2/07 • • • • Steam [7, 2006.01]
- 2/08 • • Radiation [3, 2006.01]
- 2/10 • • • Ultra-violet radiation [3, 2006.01]
- 2/12 • • • Microwaves [3, 2006.01]
- 2/14 • • Plasma, i.e. ionised gases [3, 2006.01]
- 2/16 • using chemical substances [3, 2006.01]
- 2/18 • • Liquid substances [3, 2006.01]
- 2/20 • • Gaseous substances, e.g. vapours [3, 2006.01]
- 2/22 • • Phase substances, e.g. smokes, aerosols [3, 2006.01]
- 2/23 • • Solid substances, e.g. granules, powders, blocks, tablets [7, 2006.01]
- 2/232 • • • layered or coated [7, 2006.01]
- 2/235 • • • cellular, porous or foamed [7, 2006.01]
- 2/238 • • • Metals or alloys, e.g. oligodynamic metals [7, 2006.01]
- 2/24 • Apparatus using programmed or automatic operation [3, 2006.01]
- 2/26 • Accessories [3, 2006.01]
- 2/28 • • Devices for testing the effectiveness or completeness of sterilisation, e.g. indicators which change colour (apparatus involving enzymes or microorganisms C12M 1/34) [7, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Disinfection, sterilisation or deodorisation of air** (purifying air by respirators A62B, A62D 9/00; chemical or biological purification of waste gases B01D 53/34; air-conditioning systems incorporating sterilisation F24F 3/16, F24F 8/20) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/01 • Deodorant compositions [2, 2006.01]
- 9/012 • • characterised by being in a special form, e.g. gels, emulsions [7, 2006.01]
- 9/013 • • containing animal or plant extracts, or vegetable material [7, 2006.01]
- 9/014 • • containing sorbent material, e.g. activated carbon [7, 2006.01]
- 9/015 • using gaseous or vaporious substances, e.g. ozone (A61L 9/20 takes precedence) [3, 2006.01]
- 9/02 • • using substances evaporated in the air by heating or combustion [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 9/03 • • • Apparatus therefor [3, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • • using substances evaporated in the air without heating [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 9/05 • • • specially adapted to be released by contact with a liquid, e.g. for toilets [7, 2006.01]
- 9/12 • • • Apparatus, e.g. holders, therefor [3, 2006.01]
- 9/14 • using sprayed or atomised substances [3, 2006.01]
- 9/16 • using physical phenomena [3, 2006.01]
- 9/18 • • Radiation (A61L 9/22 takes precedence) [3, 2006.01]
- 9/20 • • • Ultra-violet radiation [3, 2006.01]
- 9/22 • • Ionisation [3, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Disinfection or sterilising methods specially adapted for refuse** [1, 2006.01]
- 12/00 Methods or apparatus for disinfecting or sterilising contact lenses; Accessories therefor** [7, 2006.01]
- 12/02 • using physical phenomena, e.g. electricity, ultrasonics or ultrafiltration [7, 2006.01]
- 12/04 • • Heat (A61L 12/06 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 12/06 • • Radiation, e.g. ultra-violet or microwaves [7, 2006.01]
- 12/08 • using chemical substances [7, 2006.01]
- 12/10 • • Halogens or compounds thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 12/12 • • Non-macromolecular oxygen-containing compounds, e.g. hydrogen peroxide or ozone (A61L 12/10 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 12/14 • • Organic compounds not covered by groups A61L 12/10 or A61L 12/12 [7, 2006.01]
- Chemical aspects of bandages, dressings, or absorbent pads or use of materials for their realisation; Materials for surgical articles, e.g. surgical sutures; Surgical adhesives or cements; Materials for prostheses, catheters or colostomy devices**
- 15/00 Chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, bandages, dressings or absorbent pads** (for liquid bandages A61L 26/00; radioactive dressings A61M 36/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/07 • Stiffening bandages [1, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [5]**
- In groups A61L 15/08-A61L 15/12, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
 - When classifying in groups A61L 15/08-A61L 15/12, classification is also made in group A61L 15/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.
- 15/08 • • containing inorganic materials, e.g. plaster of Paris [5, 2006.01]
- 15/10 • • containing organic materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/12 • • containing macromolecular materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/14 • • Use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties [5, 2006.01]
- 15/16 • Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads for physiological fluids such as urine or blood, e.g. sanitary towels, tampons [5, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [5]**
- In groups A61L 15/18-A61L 15/40, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
 - When classifying in groups A61L 15/18-A61L 15/40, classification is also made in group A61L 15/42 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.
- 15/18 • • containing inorganic materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/20 • • containing organic materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/22 • • containing macromolecular materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/24 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Derivatives thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 15/26 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Derivatives thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 15/28 • • • Polysaccharides or their derivatives [5, 2006.01]
- 15/30 • • • Rubbers or their derivatives [5, 2006.01]
- 15/32 • • • Proteins, polypeptides; Degradation products or derivatives thereof, e.g. albumin, collagen, fibrin, gelatin [5, 2006.01]

A61L

- 15/34 • • • Oils, fats, waxes, or natural resins [5, 2006.01]
- 15/36 • • containing microorganisms [5, 2006.01]
- 15/38 • • containing enzymes [5, 2006.01]
- 15/40 • • containing ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [5, 2006.01]
- 15/42 • • Use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties [5, 2006.01]
- 15/44 • • • Medicaments [5, 2006.01]
- 15/46 • • • Deodorants or malodour counteractants, e.g. to inhibit the formation of ammonia or bacteria [5, 2006.01]
- 15/48 • • • Surfactants [5, 2006.01]
- 15/50 • • • Lubricants; Anti-adhesive agents [5, 2006.01]
- 15/52 • • • Water-repellants [5, 2006.01]
- 15/54 • • • Radio-opaque materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/56 • • • Wetness-indicators or colorants [5, 2006.01]
- 15/58 • • • Adhesives (electrically conductive adhesives for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* A61K 50/00) [5, 2006.01]
- 15/60 • • • Liquid-swellable gel-forming materials, e.g. super-absorbents [5, 2006.01]
- 15/62 • • • Hydrosoluble or hydrodegradable materials [5, 2006.01]
- 15/64 • • • specially adapted to be resorbable inside the body [5, 2006.01]

17/00 Materials for surgical sutures or for ligaturing blood vessels [1, 3, 4, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 17/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

Note(s) [7]

In groups A61L 17/04-A61L 17/14, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 17/04 • Non-resorbable materials [7, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • At least partly resorbable materials [7, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • • of animal origin, e.g. catgut, collagen [7, 2006.01]
- 17/10 • • containing macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 17/12 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of glycolic or lactic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 17/14 • Post-treatment to improve physical properties [7, 2006.01]

24/00 Surgical adhesives or cements; Adhesives for colostomy devices (electrically conductive adhesives for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* A61K 50/00) [7, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 24/00, classification is also made in group A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

Note(s) [7]

In groups A61L 24/02-A61L 24/04, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 24/02 • containing inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 24/04 • containing macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 24/06 • • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]

- 24/08 • • Polysaccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 24/10 • • Polypeptides; Proteins [7, 2006.01]
- 24/12 • • Ionomer cements, e.g. glass-ionomer cements [7, 2006.01]

26/00 Chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, liquid bandages [7, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 26/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

27/00 Materials for prostheses or for coating prostheses (dental prostheses A61C 13/00; shape or structure of prostheses A61F 2/00; use of preparations for artificial teeth A61K 6/80; artificial kidneys A61M 1/14) [4, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 27/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

Note(s) [7]

1. In groups A61L 27/02-A61L 27/40, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. When classifying in groups A61L 27/02-A61L 27/40, classification is also made in group A61L 27/50 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 27/02 • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/04 • • Metals or alloys [7, 2006.01]
- 27/06 • • • Titanium or titanium alloys [7, 2006.01]
- 27/08 • • Carbon [7, 2006.01]
- 27/10 • • Ceramics or glasses [7, 2006.01]
- 27/12 • • Phosphorus-containing materials, e.g. apatite [7, 2006.01]
- 27/14 • Macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/16 • • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]
- 27/18 • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]
- 27/20 • • Polysaccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 27/22 • • Polypeptides or derivatives thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 27/24 • • • Collagen [7, 2006.01]
- 27/26 • • Mixtures of macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/28 • Materials for coating prostheses [7, 2006.01]
- 27/30 • • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/32 • • • Phosphorus-containing materials, e.g. apatite [7, 2006.01]
- 27/34 • • Macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/36 • containing ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 27/38 • • Animal cells (for use in artificial skin A61L 27/60) [7, 2006.01]
- 27/40 • Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7, 2006.01]
- 27/42 • • having an inorganic matrix [7, 2006.01]
- 27/44 • • having a macromolecular matrix [7, 2006.01]

- 27/46 • • • with phosphorus-containing inorganic fillers [7, 2006.01]
- 27/48 • • • with macromolecular fillers [7, 2006.01]
- 27/50 • Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7, 2006.01]
- 27/52 • • Hydrogels or hydrocolloids [7, 2006.01]
- 27/54 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7, 2006.01]
- 27/56 • • Porous or cellular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 27/58 • • Materials at least partially resorbable by the body [7, 2006.01]
- 27/60 • • Materials for use in artificial skin [7, 2006.01]

28/00 Materials for colostomy devices (adhesives for colostomy devices A61L 24/00) [7, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 28/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

29/00 Materials for catheters or for coating catheters (shape or structure of catheters A61M 25/00) [4, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 29/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

Note(s) [7]

- In groups A61L 29/02-A61L 29/12, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
- When classifying in groups A61L 29/02-A61L 29/12, classification is also made in group A61L 29/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 29/02 • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 29/04 • Macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 29/06 • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]
- 29/08 • Materials for coatings [7, 2006.01]
- 29/10 • • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 29/12 • Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7, 2006.01]
- 29/14 • Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7, 2006.01]
- 29/16 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7, 2006.01]
- 29/18 • • Materials at least partially X-ray or laser opaque [7, 2006.01]

31/00 Materials for other surgical articles [4, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

When classifying in group A61L 31/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

Note(s) [7]

- In groups A61L 31/02-A61L 31/12, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
 - When classifying in groups A61L 31/02-A61L 31/12, classification is also made in group A61L 31/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.
- 31/02 • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 31/04 • Macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 31/06 • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]
- 31/08 • Materials for coatings [7, 2006.01]
- 31/10 • • Macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 31/12 • Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7, 2006.01]
- 31/14 • Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7, 2006.01]
- 31/16 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7, 2006.01]
- 31/18 • • Materials at least partially X-ray or laser opaque [7, 2006.01]

33/00 Antithrombogenic treatment of surgical articles, e.g. sutures, catheters, prostheses, or of articles for the manipulation or conditioning of blood; Materials for such treatment [4, 7, 2006.01]

Note(s) [7]

In groups A61L 33/02-A61L 33/18, the last place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 33/02 • Use of inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • Use of organic materials, e.g. acetylsalicylic acid [7, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • Use of macromolecular materials [7, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • Polysaccharides [7, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • • • Heparin, heparinoid or derivatives thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • Polypeptides, proteins or derivatives thereof [7, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • Use of fibrinolytic agents or platelet aggregation inhibitors [7, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • Use of enzymes, e.g. urokinase, streptokinase [7, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • Use of ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [7, 2006.01]

Indexing scheme associated with groups A61L 2/00-A61L 12/00, relating to the chemical composition of the materials used in disinfecting, sterilising or deodorising. [7]

101/00 Chemical composition of materials used in disinfecting, sterilising or deodorising [7, 2006.01]

- 101/02 • Inorganic materials [7, 2006.01]
- 101/04 • • Elemental carbon, e.g. active charcoal [7, 2006.01]
- 101/06 • • containing halogen [7, 2006.01]
- 101/08 • • • Elemental halogen [7, 2006.01]

A61L

101/10	• • Ozone [7, 2006.01]	101/38	• • Ethers [7, 2006.01]
101/12	• • containing silicon [7, 2006.01]	101/40	• • containing sulfur [7, 2006.01]
101/14	• • containing sulfur [7, 2006.01]	101/42	• • Organo-metallic compounds or complexes [7, 2006.01]
101/16	• • containing phosphorus [7, 2006.01]	101/44	• • Heterocyclic compounds [7, 2006.01]
101/18	• • Ammonia [7, 2006.01]	101/46	• • Macromolecular compounds [7, 2006.01]
101/20	• • Acids [7, 2006.01]	101/48	• • • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7, 2006.01]
101/22	• • Peroxides [7, 2006.01]	101/50	• • • Polysaccharides or derivatives thereof [7, 2006.01]
101/24	• • containing aluminium [7, 2006.01]	101/52	• Microorganisms or substances produced by or extracted from microorganisms [7, 2006.01]
101/26	• • containing copper [7, 2006.01]	101/54	• Enzymes [7, 2006.01]
101/28	• • containing iron [7, 2006.01]	101/56	• Plant extracts or vegetable products of undetermined chemical constitution, e.g. plant fibre [7, 2006.01]
101/30	• • containing zinc [7, 2006.01]		
101/32	• Organic compounds [7, 2006.01]		
101/34	• • Hydroxy compounds [7, 2006.01]		
101/36	• • Carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof [7, 2006.01]		

A61M DEVICES FOR INTRODUCING MEDIA INTO, OR ONTO, THE BODY (introducing media into or onto the bodies of animals A61D 7/00; means for inserting tampons A61F 13/26; devices for administering food or medicines orally A61J; containers for collecting, storing or administering blood or medical fluids A61J 1/05); **DEVICES FOR TRANSDUCING BODY MEDIA OR FOR TAKING MEDIA FROM THE BODY** (surgery A61B; chemical aspects of surgical articles A61L; magnetotherapy using magnetic elements placed within the body A61N 2/10); **DEVICES FOR PRODUCING OR ENDING SLEEP OR STUPOR** [4, 5]

Note(s) [5, 2006.01]

1. This subclass covers suction, pumping or atomising devices for medical use (e.g. cups, breast relievers, irrigators, sprays, powder insufflators, atomisers, inhalers), apparatus for general or local anaesthetics, devices or methods for causing a change in the state of consciousness, catheters, dilators, apparatus for introducing medicines into the body other than orally.
2. In this subclass, group A61M 36/00, which relates to the application of radioactive material to the body, takes precedence over other groups.
3. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

Subclass index

SUCTION OR PUMPING DEVICES.....	1/00, 60/00
SYRINGES; IRRIGATORS; BATHS FOR THE INTESTINES.....	3/00, 5/00, 9/00
SPRAYERS, ATOMISERS; INSUFFLATORS.....	11/00, 13/00
INHALING DEVICES.....	15/00, 16/00
DEVICES FOR PRODUCING OR ENDING SLEEP OR ANAESTHESIA.....	16/00, 19/00, 21/00
PROBES, CATHETERS; DRAINS; DILATORS.....	25/00, 27/00, 29/00
TUBES, TUBE CONNECTORS, TUBE COUPLINGS, VALVES, ACCESS SITES OR THE LIKE, SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL USE.....	39/00
OTHER DEVICES FOR INTRODUCING OR RETAINING REMEDIES IN THE BODY.....	31/00, 37/00
OTHER DEVICES FOR SPREADING REMEDIES ON THE BODY.....	35/00
APPLYING RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL TO THE BODY.....	36/00

1/00	Suction or pumping devices for medical purposes; Devices for carrying-off, for treatment of, or for carrying-over, body-liquids; Drainage systems (catheters A61M 25/00; tube connectors, tube couplings, valves or branch units, specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00; devices for taking samples of blood A61B 5/15; saliva removers for dentists A61C 17/06; filters implantable into blood vessels A61F 2/01) [1, 5, 2006.01]	1/14	• Dialysis systems; Artificial kidneys; Blood oxygenators (semi-permeable membranes characterised by the material, manufacturing processes therefor B01D 71/00) [4, 2006.01]
1/02	• Blood transfusion apparatus (blood infusion by syringes A61M 5/14) [1, 2006.01]	1/16	• • with membranes [4, 2006.01]
1/04	• Pneumothorax apparatus [1, 2006.01]	1/18	• • • in the shape of hollow fibres [4, 2006.01]
1/06	• Milking pumps [1, 2006.01]	1/20	• • • tubular [4, 2006.01]
1/08	• Cupping glasses [1, 2006.01]	1/22	• • • sheet-like [4, 2006.01]
		1/24	• • • spirally wound [4, 2006.01]
		1/26	• • • which are moving [4, 2006.01]
		1/28	• • Peritoneal dialysis [4, 2006.01]
		1/30	• • Single needle dialysis [4, 2006.01]
		1/32	• • Oxygenators without membranes [4, 2006.01]
		1/34	• Filtering material out of the blood by passing it through a membrane, i.e. hemofiltration, diafiltration [4, 2006.01]

- 1/36 • Other treatment of blood in a by-pass of the natural circulatory system, e.g. temperature adaptation, irradiation [4, 2006.01]
- 1/38 • • Removing constituents from donor blood and returning remainder to body [5, 2006.01]

Syringes; Irrigators; Baths for subaquatic intestinal cleaning [6]

3/00 Medical syringes, e.g. enemata; Irrigators (A61M 5/00 takes precedence; pistons A61M 5/315) [1, 2, 2006.01]

- 3/02 • Enemata; Irrigators [5, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • specially adapted for the uterus [5, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • combined with bidets [5, 2006.01]

5/00 Devices for bringing media into the body in a subcutaneous, intra-vascular or intramuscular way; Accessories therefor, e.g. filling or cleaning devices, arm rests (tube connectors, tube couplings, valves or branch units, specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00; containers specially adapted for medical or pharmaceutical purposes A61J 1/00) [1, 5, 2006.01]

- 5/14 • Infusion devices, e.g. infusing by gravity; Blood infusion; Accessories therefor [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/142 • • Pressure infusion, e.g. using pumps [5, 2006.01]

Note(s) [5]

In this group, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "pressure infusion" includes powered injection working at a controlled rate.
- 5/145 • • • using pressurised reservoirs, e.g. by means of pistons [5, 2006.01]
- 5/148 • • • • flexible (A61M 5/155 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/152 • • • • • pressurised by contraction of elastic reservoirs [5, 2006.01]
- 5/155 • • • • • pressurised by gas [5, 2006.01]
- 5/158 • • Needles [5, 2006.01]
- 5/162 • • Needle sets, i.e. connections by puncture between reservoir and tube [5, 2006.01]
- 5/165 • • Filtering accessories, e.g. blood filters, filters for infusion liquids (A61M 1/34, A61M 5/36 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/168 • • Means for controlling media flow to the body or for metering media to the body, e.g. drip meters, counters [5, 2006.01]
- 5/172 • • • electrical or electronic [5, 2006.01]
- 5/175 • • • mechanical [5, 2006.01]
- 5/178 • Syringes [5, 2006.01]
- 5/19 • • having more than one chamber [5, 2006.01]
- 5/20 • • Automatic syringes, e.g. with automatically actuated piston rod, with automatic needle injection, filling automatically (A61M 5/142 takes precedence) [1, 2, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/24 • • Ampoule syringes, i.e. syringes with needle for use in combination with replaceable ampoules or cartridges, e.g. automatic [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/28 • • Syringe ampoules or cartridges, i.e. ampoules or cartridges provided with a needle [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/30 • • Syringes for injection by jet action, without needle, e.g. for use with replaceable ampoules or cartridges [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/303 • • • Media expelled from injector by explosive charge [5, 2006.01]

- 5/307 • • • Media expelled from injector by pressurised fluid [5, 2006.01]
- 5/31 • • Details [2, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/315 • • • Pistons; Piston-rods; Guiding, blocking or restricting the movement of the rod; Appliances on the rod for facilitating dosing [2, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/32 • • • Needles; Details of needles pertaining to their connection with syringe or hub (infusion needles A61M 5/158); Accessories for bringing the needle into, or holding the needle on, the body; Devices for protection of needles [1, 2, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/34 • • • • Constructions for connecting the needle [2, 5, 2006.01]
- 5/36 • with means for eliminating or preventing injection or infusion of air into body [5, 2006.01]
- 5/38 • • using hydrophilic or hydrophobic filters [5, 2006.01]
- 5/40 • • using low-level float-valve to cut off media flow from reservoir [5, 2006.01]
- 5/42 • having means for desensitising skin, for protruding skin to facilitate piercing, or for locating point where body is to be pierced [5, 2006.01]
- 5/44 • having means for cooling or heating the devices or media [5, 2006.01]
- 5/46 • having means for controlling depth of insertion [5, 2006.01]
- 5/48 • having means for varying, regulating, indicating or limiting injection pressure (A61M 5/142 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 5/50 • having means for preventing re-use, or for indicating if defective, used, tampered with or unsterile [5, 2006.01]
- 5/52 • Arm-rests [5, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Baths for subaquatic intestinal cleaning [1, 2006.01]**

Sprayers; Atomisers; Insufflators

11/00 Sprayers or atomisers specially adapted for therapeutic purposes [1, 2006.01]

- 11/02 • operated by air pressure applied to the liquid to be sprayed or atomised [1, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • operated by the vapour pressure of the liquid to be sprayed or atomised [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • of the injector type [1, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • • Pocket atomisers of the injector type [1, 2006.01]

13/00 Insufflators for therapeutic or disinfectant purposes [1, 2006.01]

Inhaling devices

15/00 Inhalators [1, 2006.01]

- 15/02 • with activated or ionized gases; Ozone-inhalators [1, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • Inhaling appliances shaped like cigars, cigarettes or pipes [1, 2006.01]
- 15/08 • Inhaling devices inserted into the nose [1, 2006.01]

16/00 Devices for influencing the respiratory system of patients by gas treatment, e.g. mouth-to-mouth respiration; Tracheal tubes (stimulating the respiratory movement by mechanical, pneumatic or electrical means, iron lungs combined with gas breathing means A61H 31/00) [1, 4, 2006.01]

- 16/01 • specially adapted for anaesthetising [4, 2006.01]

A61M

- 16/04 • Tracheal tubes [4, 2006.01]
- 16/06 • Respiratory or anaesthetic masks [4, 2006.01]
- 16/08 • Bellows; Connecting tubes [4, 2006.01]
- 16/10 • Preparation of respiratory gases or vapours [4, 2006.01]
- 16/12 • • by mixing different gases [4, 2006.01]
- 16/14 • • by mixing different fluids, one of them being in a liquid phase [4, 2006.01]
- 16/16 • • • Devices to humidify the respiration air [4, 2006.01]
- 16/18 • • • Vaporising devices for anaesthetic preparations [4, 2006.01]
- 16/20 • Valves specially adapted to medical respiratory devices [4, 2006.01]
- 16/22 • Carbon dioxide-absorbing devices [4, 2006.01]

Other devices for producing sleep or stupor; Devices for ending sleep or stupor [4]

- 19/00 **Devices for local anaesthesia; Devices for hypothermia** (A61M 5/42 takes precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
 - 21/00 **Other devices or methods to cause a change in the state of consciousness; Devices for producing or ending sleep by mechanical, optical, or acoustical means, e.g. for hypnosis** (beds for promoting sleep A61G 7/043) [1, 2006.01]
 - 21/02 • for inducing sleep or relaxation, e.g. by direct nerve stimulation, hypnosis, analgesia (for massage A61H; electrotherapy A61N, e.g. applying alternating or intermittent electric currents for producing anaesthesia A61N 1/34) [5, 2006.01]
-
- 25/00 **Catheters; Hollow probes** (for measuring or testing A61B) [1, 2006.01]
 - 25/01 • Introducing, guiding, advancing, emplacing or holding catheters (A61M 25/10 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
 - 25/02 • • Holding devices, e.g. on the body [1, 5, 2006.01]
 - 25/04 • • • in the body, e.g. expansible [5, 2006.01]
 - 25/06 • • Body-piercing guide needles or the like (A61M 25/088 takes precedence) [5, 6, 2006.01]
 - 25/08 • • Advancing means, e.g. self-propelled [5, 2006.01]
 - 25/082 • • • Self-propulsion arrangements (A61M 25/085 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/085 • • • Fluid propulsion [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/088 • • using an additional catheter, e.g. to reach relatively inaccessible places [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/09 • • Guide wires [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/092 • • Remote control of the orientation of the distal end [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/095 • • Arrangements for enabling the detection of the internal position of the catheter, e.g. radiographically [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/098 • • • using radio-opaque markers [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/10 • Balloon catheters (inflatable balloons for placing stents or stent-grafts A61F 2/958) [5, 2006.01, 2013.01]
 - 25/12 • • Arrangements for detaching the balloon when in place [6, 2006.01]
 - 25/14 • Arrangement or shape of fluid flow passages, e.g. of plural fluid passages (A61M 25/10 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]

- 25/16 • Making or assembling not otherwise provided for [6, 2006.01]
- 25/18 • • Connecting catheters or probes to hubs [6, 2006.01]
- 27/00 **Drainage appliances for wounds, or the like** (implements for holding wounds open A61B 17/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 **Dilators with or without means for introducing media, e.g. remedies** (stents A61F 2/82) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 29/02 • Inflatable dilators (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00); Dilators made of swellable materials [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 29/04 • • Dilators made of swellable materials [5, 2006.01]
- 31/00 **Devices for introducing or retaining media, e.g. remedies, in cavities of the body** (A61M 25/00 takes precedence) [1, 2, 5, 2006.01]
- 35/00 **Devices for applying media, e.g. remedies, on the human body** (devices for handling toilet or cosmetic substances A45D; absorbent pads, e.g. swabs, A61F 13/15) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 36/00 **Applying radioactive material to the body** [5, 2006.01]
- 36/02 • combined with other radiant- or wave-energy source, e.g. electromagnetic, thermal, microwave [5, 2006.01]
- 36/04 • Arrangements specially adapted for placing, e.g. inhaling or injecting, radioactive material within the body [5, 2006.01]
- 36/06 • • by fluid injection of radioactive or enhancing agent through a body-piercing conduit [5, 2006.01]
- 36/08 • • • Fluid reservoir shielding, e.g. syringe shielding [5, 2006.01]
- 36/10 • • Utero-vaginal or pelvic application [5, 2006.01]
- 36/12 • • Injectors, holders for seeds or implants, e.g. capsules [5, 2006.01]
- 36/14 • Radioactive dressings [5, 2006.01]
- 37/00 **Other apparatus for introducing media into the body** (for reproduction or fertilisation A61B 17/425; apparatus for iontophoresis or cataphoresis A61N 1/30); **Percutany, i.e. introducing medicines into the body by diffusion through the skin** (salt baths A61H 33/04) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 39/00 **Tubes, tube connectors, tube couplings, valves, access sites or the like, specially adapted for medical use** (for respiratory devices, e.g. tracheal tubes, A61M 16/00; artificial heart valves A61F 2/24) [5, 2006.01]
- 39/02 • Access sites [5, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • • having pierceable self-sealing members [5, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • • Haemostasis valves, i.e. gaskets sealing around a needle, catheter or the like, closing on removal thereof [6, 2006.01]
- 39/08 • Tubes; Storage means specially adapted therefor [6, 2006.01]
- 39/10 • Tube connectors or tube couplings [6, 2006.01]
- 39/12 • • for joining a flexible tube to a rigid attachment [6, 2006.01]
- 39/14 • • for connecting tubes having sealed ends [6, 2006.01]
- 39/16 • • having provision for disinfection or sterilisation [6, 2006.01]

- 39/18 • • • Methods or apparatus for making the connection under sterile conditions, i.e. sterile docking [6, 2006.01]
- 39/20 • Closure caps or plugs for connectors or open ends of tubes [6, 2006.01]
- 39/22 • Valves or arrangement of valves [6, 2006.01]
- 39/24 • • Check- or non-return valves [6, 2006.01]
- 39/26 • • Valves closing automatically on disconnecting the line and opening on reconnection thereof [6, 2006.01]
- 39/28 • • Clamping means for squeezing flexible tubes, e.g. roller clamps [6, 2006.01]
- 60/00 Blood pumps; Devices for mechanical circulatory actuation; Balloon pumps for circulatory assistance (heart stimulation A61H 31/00; heart stimulators for electrotherapy A61N 1/362) [2021.01]**
- Note(s) [2021.01]**
- In this main group, it is obligatory to classify all aspects of location, type, medical purpose, driving details, control details, and constructional details other than driving details, that are represented in groups A61M 60/10, A61M 60/20, A61M 60/30, A61M 60/40, A61M 60/50 and A61M 60/80. This obligation extends to information that would normally only be considered as additional information.*
- 60/10 • Location thereof with respect to the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/104 • • Extracorporeal pumps, i.e. the blood being pumped outside the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/109 • • • incorporated within extracorporeal blood circuits or systems [2021.01]
- 60/113 • • • • in other functional devices, e.g. dialysers or heart-lung machines [2021.01]
- 60/117 • • • for assisting the heart, e.g. transcutaneous or external ventricular assist devices [2021.01]
- 60/122 • • Implantable pumps or pumping devices, i.e. the blood being pumped inside the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/126 • • • implantable via, into, inside, in line, branching on, or around a blood vessel [2021.01]
- 60/13 • • • • by means of a catheter allowing explantation, e.g. catheter pumps temporarily introduced via the vascular system [2021.01]
- 60/135 • • • • inside a blood vessel, e.g. using grafting [2021.01]
- 60/139 • • • • • inside the aorta, e.g. intra-aortic balloon pumps [2021.01]
- 60/143 • • • • • inside the coronary sinus, e.g. for pressure-controlled intermittent coronary sinus occlusion [2021.01]
- 60/148 • • • • in line with a blood vessel using resection or like techniques, e.g. permanent endovascular heart assist devices [2021.01]
- 60/152 • • • • branching on and drawing blood from a blood vessel [2021.01]
- 60/157 • • • • mechanically acting upon the inside of the patient's blood vessel structure, e.g. contractile structures placed inside a vessel [2021.01]
- 60/161 • • • • mechanically acting upon the outside of the patient's blood vessel structure, e.g. compressive structures placed around a vessel [2021.01]
- 60/165 • • • implantable in, on, or around the heart [2021.01]
- 60/17 • • • • inside a ventricle, e.g. intraventricular balloon pumps [2021.01]
- 60/174 • • • • • discharging the blood to the ventricle or arterial system via a cannula internal to the ventricle or arterial system [2021.01]
- 60/178 • • • • drawing blood from a ventricle and returning the blood to the arterial system via a cannula external to the ventricle, e.g. left or right ventricular assist devices [2021.01]
- 60/183 • • • • • drawing blood from both ventricles, e.g. bi-ventricular assist devices [BiVAD] [2021.01]
- 60/187 • • • • • mechanically acting upon the inside of the patient's native heart, e.g. contractile structures placed inside the heart [2021.01]
- 60/191 • • • • • mechanically acting upon the outside of the patient's native heart, e.g. compressive structures placed around the heart [2021.01]
- 60/196 • • • replacing the entire heart, e.g. total artificial hearts [TAH] [2021.01]
- 60/20 • Type thereof [2021.01]
- 60/205 • • Non-positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/211 • • • using a jet, venturi or entrainment effect for pumping the blood [2021.01]
- 60/216 • • • including a rotating member acting on the blood, e.g. impeller [2021.01]
- 60/221 • • • • the blood flow through the rotating member having both radial and axial components, e.g. mixed flow pumps [2021.01]
- 60/226 • • • • the blood flow through the rotating member having mainly radial components [2021.01]
- 60/232 • • • • • Centrifugal pumps [2021.01]
- 60/237 • • • • the blood flow through the rotating member having mainly axial components, e.g. axial flow pumps [2021.01]
- 60/242 • • • • • with the outlet substantially perpendicular to the axis of rotation [2021.01]
- 60/247 • • Positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/253 • • • including a displacement member directly acting on the blood [2021.01]
- 60/258 • • • • Piston pumps [2021.01]
- 60/263 • • • • • having a spherical housing, e.g. cardan pumps [2021.01]
- 60/268 • • • • the displacement member being flexible, e.g. membranes, diaphragms or bladders [2021.01]
- 60/274 • • • • • the inlet and outlet being the same, e.g. para-aortic counter-pulsation blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/279 • • • • • Peristaltic pumps, e.g. roller pumps [2021.01]
- 60/284 • • • • • • Linear peristaltic pumps [2021.01]
- 60/289 • • Devices for mechanical circulatory actuation assisting the residual heart function by means mechanically acting upon the patient's native heart or blood vessel structure, e.g. direct cardiac compression [DCC] devices [2021.01]
- 60/295 • • Balloon pumps for circulatory assistance [2021.01]
- 60/30 • Medical purposes thereof other than the enhancement of the cardiac output [2021.01]
- 60/31 • • for enhancement of in vivo organ perfusion, e.g. retroperfusion [2021.01]
- 60/32 • • • of heart muscle tissues, e.g. using coronary sinus occlusion [2021.01]
- 60/33 • • • of kidneys [2021.01]

- 60/34 • • for enhancement of circulation to the extremities, e.g. the feet [2021.01]
- 60/35 • • for specific surgeries, e.g. for Fontan procedure [2021.01]
- 60/36 • • for specific blood treatment; for specific therapy [2021.01]
- 60/37 • • • Haemodialysis, haemofiltration or diafiltration [2021.01]
- 60/38 • • • Blood oxygenation [2021.01]
- 60/39 • • for blood transfusion [2021.01]
- 60/40 • Details relating to driving [2021.01]
- 60/403 • • for non-positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/405 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being hydraulic or pneumatic [2021.01]
- 60/408 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being mechanical, e.g. transmitted by a shaft or cable [2021.01]
- 60/411 • • • • generated by an electromotor [2021.01]
- 60/414 • • • • • transmitted by a rotating cable, e.g. for blood pumps mounted on a catheter [2021.01]
- 60/416 • • • • • transmitted directly by the motor rotor drive shaft [2021.01]
- 60/419 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being permanent magnetic, e.g. from a rotating magnetic coupling between driving and driven magnets [2021.01]
- 60/422 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being electromagnetic, e.g. using canned motor pumps [2021.01]
- 60/424 • • for positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/427 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being hydraulic or pneumatic [2021.01]
- 60/43 • • • • using vacuum at the blood pump, e.g. to accelerate filling [2021.01]
- 60/432 • • • • • with diastole or systole switching by stopping or reversing the blood pump operating at a much higher cyclical speed than the heart beat [2021.01]
- 60/435 • • • • • with diastole or systole switching by valve means located between the blood pump and the hydraulic or pneumatic energy source [2021.01]
- 60/438 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being mechanical [2021.01]
- 60/441 • • • • generated by an electromotor [2021.01]
- 60/443 • • • • • with means converting the rotation into a translational movement of the displacement member [2021.01]
- 60/446 • • • • • the axis of both movements being parallel, e.g. roller screw actuators or cylindrical cam transmissions [2021.01]
- 60/449 • • • • generated by a solenoid [2021.01]
- 60/451 • • • • generated by electro-thermomechanical actuators, e.g. shape memory alloy actuators [2021.01]
- 60/454 • • • • generated by electro-active actuators, e.g. using electro-active polymers or piezo-electric elements [2021.01]
- 60/457 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being magnetic [2021.01]
- 60/459 • • • • generated by permanent magnets [2021.01]
- 60/462 • • • • Electromagnetic force [2021.01]
- 60/465 • • for devices for mechanical circulatory actuation [2021.01]
- 60/468 • • • the force acting on the actuation means being hydraulic or pneumatic [2021.01]
- 60/47 • • • the force acting on the actuation means being mechanical, e.g. mechanically driven members clamping a blood vessel [2021.01]
- 60/473 • • • • generated by an electromotor [2021.01]
- 60/476 • • • • • with means converting the rotation into a translational movement of the displacement member [2021.01]
- 60/478 • • • • • the axis of both movements being parallel, e.g. roller screw actuators or cylindrical cam transmissions [2021.01]
- 60/481 • • • • generated by a solenoid [2021.01]
- 60/484 • • • • generated by electro-thermomechanical actuators, e.g. shape memory alloy actuators [2021.01]
- 60/486 • • • • generated by electro-active actuators, e.g. using electro-active polymers or piezo-electric elements [2021.01]
- 60/489 • • • the force acting on the blood contacting member being magnetic [2021.01]
- 60/492 • • • • generated by permanent magnets [2021.01]
- 60/495 • • • • Electromagnetic force [2021.01]
- 60/497 • • for balloon pumps for circulatory assistance [2021.01]
- 60/50 • Details relating to control [2021.01]
- 60/508 • • Electronic control means, e.g. for feedback regulation [2021.01]
- 60/515 • • • Regulation using real-time patient data [2021.01]
- 60/523 • • • • using blood flow data, e.g. from blood flow transducers [2021.01]
- 60/531 • • • • using blood pressure data, e.g. from blood pressure sensors [2021.01]
- 60/538 • • • Regulation using real-time blood pump operational parameter data, e.g. motor current [2021.01]
- 60/546 • • • • of blood flow, e.g. by adapting rotor speed [2021.01]
- 60/554 • • • • of blood pressure [2021.01]
- 60/562 • • • for making blood flow pulsatile in blood pumps that do not intrinsically create pulsatile flow [2021.01]
- 60/569 • • • • synchronous with the native heart beat [2021.01]
- 60/577 • • • High-frequency driving [2021.01]
- 60/585 • • User interfaces [2021.01]
- 60/592 • • Communication of patient or blood pump data to distant operators for treatment purposes [2021.01]
- 60/80 • Constructional details other than related to driving [2021.01]
- 60/802 • • of non-positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/804 • • • Impellers [2021.01]
- 60/806 • • • • Vanes or blades [2021.01]
- 60/808 • • • • • specially adapted for deformable impellers, e.g. expandable impellers [2021.01]
- 60/81 • • • Pump housings [2021.01]
- 60/812 • • • • Vanes or blades, e.g. static flow guides [2021.01]
- 60/814 • • • • Volutas [2021.01]

- 60/816 • • • • Sensors arranged on or in the housing, e.g. ultrasound flow sensors [2021.01]
- 60/818 • • • • Bearings [2021.01]
- 60/82 • • • • Magnetic bearings [2021.01]
- 60/822 • • • • • specially adapted for being actively controlled [2021.01]
- 60/824 • • • • Hydrodynamic or fluid film bearings [2021.01]
- 60/825 • • • • Contact bearings, e.g. ball-and-cup or pivot bearings [2021.01]
- 60/827 • • • • Sealings between moving parts [2021.01]
- 60/829 • • • • having a purge fluid supply [2021.01]
- 60/831 • • • • • using filtered blood as purge fluid [2021.01]
- 60/833 • • • • Occluders for preventing backflow [2021.01]
- 60/835 • • • • of positive displacement blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/837 • • • • Aspects of flexible displacement members, e.g. shapes or materials [2021.01]
- 60/839 • • • • of devices for mechanical circulatory actuation [2021.01]
- 60/841 • • • • of balloon pumps for circulatory assistance [2021.01]
- 60/843 • • • • Balloon aspects, e.g. shapes or materials [2021.01]
- 60/845 • • • • of extracorporeal blood pumps [2021.01]
- 60/847 • • • • arranged in a cassette [2021.01]
- 60/849 • • • • Disposable parts [2021.01]
- 60/851 • • • • Valves [2021.01]
- 60/853 • • • • • the valve being formed by a flexible tube element which is clamped for restricting the flow [2021.01]
- 60/855 • • • • of implantable pumps or pumping devices [2021.01]
- 60/857 • • • • Implantable blood tubes [2021.01]
- 60/859 • • • • Connections therefor [2021.01]
- 60/861 • • • • Connections or anchorings for connecting or anchoring pumps or pumping devices to parts of the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/863 • • • • Apex rings [2021.01]
- 60/865 • • • • Devices for guiding or inserting pumps or pumping devices into the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/867 • • • • • using position detection during deployment, e.g. for blood pumps mounted on and driven through a catheter [2021.01]
- 60/869 • • • • Compliance chambers containing a gas or liquid other than blood to compensate volume variations of a blood chamber [2021.01]
- 60/871 • • • • Energy supply devices; Converters therefor [2021.01]
- 60/873 • • • • • specially adapted for wireless or transcutaneous energy transfer [TET], e.g. inductive charging [2021.01]
- 60/875 • • • • • specially adapted for optimising alignment of external and implantable coils [2021.01]
- 60/876 • • • • Implantable batteries [2021.01]
- 60/878 • • • • Electrical connections within the patient's body [2021.01]
- 60/88 • • • • Percutaneous cables [2021.01]
- 60/882 • • • • Devices powered by the patient, e.g. skeletal muscle powered devices [2021.01]
- 60/884 • • • • being associated to additional implantable blood treating devices [2021.01]
- 60/886 • • • • Blood oxygenators [2021.01]
- 60/888 • • • • Blood filters [2021.01]
- 60/89 • • • • Valves [2021.01]
- 60/892 • • • • Active valves, i.e. actuated by an external force [2021.01]
- 60/894 • • • • Passive valves, i.e. valves actuated by the blood [2021.01]
- 60/896 • • • • • having flexible or resilient parts, e.g. flap valves [2021.01]
- 60/898 • • • • • the blood pump being a membrane blood pump and the membrane acting as inlet valve [2021.01]
- 60/90 • Details not provided for in groups A61M 60/40, A61M 60/50 or A61M 60/80 [2021.01]
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2012.01]**

A61N ELECTROTHERAPY; MAGNETOTHERAPY; RADIATION THERAPY; ULTRASOUND THERAPY (measurement of bioelectric currents A61B; surgical instruments, devices or methods for transferring non-mechanical forms of energy to or from the body A61B 18/00; anaesthetic apparatus in general A61M; incandescent lamps H01K; infra-red radiators for heating H05B) [6]

Note(s) [5, 7]

In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "therapy" implies that the treatment, when it aims at destroying sick or abnormal cells, is performed within the limits of healthy cell life, the destruction thereof being undesired, contrary to that which takes place with instruments, devices or methods covered by group A61B 18/00.

Subclass index

ELECTROTHERAPY.....	1/00
MAGNETOTHERAPY.....	2/00
RADIATION THERAPY.....	5/00
ULTRASOUND THERAPY.....	7/00

1/00 Electrotherapy; Circuits therefor (A61N 2/00 takes precedence; electrically conductive preparations for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* A61K 50/00) [1, 5, 2006.01]

1/02 • Details [1, 2006.01]

1/04 • • Electrodes [1, 2006.01]

A61N

- 1/05 • • • for implantation or insertion into the body, e.g. heart electrode (A61N 1/06 takes precedence) [4, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • • • for high-frequency therapy [1, 2006.01]
- 1/08 • • Arrangements or circuits for monitoring, protecting, controlling or indicating (for a single specific type of apparatus A61N 1/10-A61N 1/44) [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 1/10 • Applying static electricity (applying ionised gases or vapours A61N 1/44) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/14 • Leading-off electric charges, e.g. by earthing [1, 2006.01]
- 1/16 • Screening or neutralising undesirable influences from atmospheric or terrestrial radiation or fields [1, 2006.01]
- 1/18 • Applying electric currents by contact electrodes [1, 2006.01]
- 1/20 • • continuous direct currents [1, 2006.01]
- 1/22 • • • Electromedical belts [1, 2006.01]
- 1/24 • • • • with built-in power source [1, 2006.01]
- 1/26 • • • Electromedical brushes; Electromedical massage devices [1, 2006.01]
- 1/28 • • • Apparatus for applying thermoelectric currents [1, 2006.01]
- 1/30 • • • Apparatus for iontophoresis or cataphoresis [1, 2006.01]
- 1/32 • • alternating or intermittent currents [1, 2006.01]
- 1/34 • • • for producing anaesthesia [1, 2006.01]
- 1/36 • • • for stimulation, e.g. heart pace-makers [1, 2006.01]
- 1/362 • • • • Heart stimulators (A61N 1/372 takes precedence; heart defibrillators A61N 1/39) [4, 2006.01]
- 1/365 • • • • • controlled by a physiological parameter, e.g. by heart potential [4, 2006.01]
- 1/368 • • • • • comprising more than one electrode co-operating with different heart regions [4, 2006.01]
- 1/37 • • • • • Monitoring; Protecting [4, 2006.01]
- 1/372 • • • • • Arrangements in connection with the implantation of stimulators [4, 2006.01]
- 1/375 • • • • • Constructional arrangements, e.g. casings [4, 2006.01]
- 1/378 • • • • • Electrical supply [4, 2006.01]
- 1/38 • • • for producing shock effects [1, 2006.01]
- 1/39 • • • • Heart defibrillators [4, 2006.01]
- 1/40 • Applying electric fields by inductive or capacitive coupling [1, 2006.01]
- 1/44 • Applying ionised fluids [1, 2006.01]
- 2/00 Magnetotherapy [5, 2006.01]**
- 2/02 • using magnetic fields produced by coils, including single turn loops or electromagnets (A61N 2/12 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 2/04 • • using variable fields, e.g. low frequency or pulsating fields [5, 2006.01]
- 2/06 • using magnetic fields produced by permanent magnets (A61N 2/12 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 2/08 • • applied externally [5, 2006.01]
- 2/10 • • applied within the body, e.g. with injected or implanted elements [5, 2006.01]
- 2/12 • using variable magnetic fields obtained by mechanical movement [5, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Radiation therapy (devices or apparatus applicable to both therapy and diagnosis A61B 6/00; applying radioactive material to the body A61M 36/00) [1, 5, 6, 2006.01]**
- 5/01 • Devices for producing movement of radiation source during therapy [1, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • using microwaves (A61N 5/01 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • • Radiators for near-field treatment [1, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • using light (A61N 5/01 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/067 • • using laser light [7, 2006.01]
- 5/073 • • using polarised light (A61N 5/067 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • • using combined infra-red and ultra-violet light [1, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • X-ray therapy; Gamma-ray therapy; Particle-irradiation therapy (A61N 5/01 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/00 Ultrasound therapy (lithotripsy A61B 17/22, A61B 17/225; massage using supersonic vibration A61H 23/00) [6, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • Localised ultrasound hyperthermia [6, 2006.01]

A61P SPECIFIC THERAPEUTIC ACTIVITY OF CHEMICAL COMPOUNDS OR MEDICINAL PREPARATIONS [7]

Note(s) [7, 2012.01]

1. This subclass covers therapeutic activity of chemical compounds or medicinal preparations already classified as such in subclasses A61K or C12N, or in classes C01, C07 or C08.
2. In this subclass, the term "drugs" includes chemical compounds or compositions with therapeutic activity.
3. In this subclass, therapeutic activity is classified in all appropriate places.
4. Attention is drawn to cases where the subject of the invention concerns only specific therapeutic activity of chemical compounds or medical preparations, and the chemical structure, compound, mixture or composition of this subject of the invention is known. In such cases, classification is made in both subclass A61K and subclass A61P as invention information. In addition, if the chemical structure, compound, mixture or composition or any individual ingredient of a mixture or composition is considered to represent information of interest for search, it may also be classified as additional information
5. The classification symbols of this subclass are not listed first when assigned to patent documents.

- 1/00 Drugs for disorders of the alimentary tract or the digestive system [7, 2006.01]**
- 1/02 • Stomatological preparations, e.g. drugs for caries, aphtae, periodontitis [7, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • for ulcers, gastritis or reflux esophagitis, e.g. antacids, inhibitors of acid secretion, mucosal protectants [7, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • Anti-spasmodics, e.g. drugs for colics, esophagic dyskinesia [7, 2006.01]

- 1/08 • for nausea, cinetosis or vertigo; Antiemetics [7, 2006.01]
- 1/10 • Laxatives [7, 2006.01]
- 1/12 • Antidiarrhoeals [7, 2006.01]
- 1/14 • Prodigestives, e.g. acids, enzymes, appetite stimulants, antidyspeptics, tonics, antifatulents [7, 2006.01]
- 1/16 • for liver or gallbladder disorders, e.g. hepatoprotective agents, cholagogues, litholytics [7, 2006.01]
- 1/18 • for pancreatic disorders, e.g. pancreatic enzymes [7, 2006.01]
- 3/00 Drugs for disorders of the metabolism (of the blood or the extracellular fluid A61P 7/00) [7, 2006.01]**
- 3/02 • Nutrients, e.g. vitamins, minerals [7, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • Anorexiant; Antiobesity agents [7, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • Antihyperlipidemics [7, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • for glucose homeostasis (pancreatic hormones A61P 5/48) [7, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • • for hyperglycaemia, e.g. antidiabetics [7, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • for electrolyte homeostasis [7, 2006.01]
- 3/14 • • for calcium homeostasis (vitamin D A61P 3/02; parathyroid hormones A61P 5/18; calcitonin A61P 5/22; osteoporosis A61P 19/10; bone metastasis A61P 35/04) [7, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Drugs for disorders of the endocrine system [7, 2006.01]**
- 5/02 • of the hypothalamic hormones, e.g. TRH, GnRH, CRH, GRH, somatostatin [7, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the hypothalamic hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • of the anterior pituitary hormones, e.g. TSH, ACTH, FSH, LH, PRL, GH [7, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the anterior pituitary hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • of the posterior pituitary hormones, e.g. oxytocin, ADH [7, 2006.01]
- 5/12 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the posterior pituitary hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/14 • of the thyroid hormones, e.g. T3, T4 [7, 2006.01]
- 5/16 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the thyroid hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/18 • of the parathyroid hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/20 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of PTH [7, 2006.01]
- 5/22 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of calcitonin [7, 2006.01]
- 5/24 • of the sex hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/26 • • Androgens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/28 • • Antiandrogens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/30 • • Oestrogens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/32 • • Antioestrogens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/34 • • Gestagens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/36 • • Antigestagens [7, 2006.01]
- 5/38 • of the suprarenal hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/40 • • Mineralocorticosteroids, e.g. aldosterone; Drugs increasing or potentiating the activity of mineralocorticosteroids [7, 2006.01]
- 5/42 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of mineralocorticosteroids [7, 2006.01]
- 5/44 • • Glucocorticosteroids; Drugs increasing or potentiating the activity of glucocorticosteroids [7, 2006.01]
- 5/46 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of glucocorticosteroids [7, 2006.01]
- 5/48 • of the pancreatic hormones [7, 2006.01]
- 5/50 • • for increasing or potentiating the activity of insulin [7, 2006.01]
- 7/00 Drugs for disorders of the blood or the extracellular fluid [7, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • Antithrombotic agents; Anticoagulants; Platelet aggregation inhibitors [7, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • Antihaemorrhagics; Procoagulants; Haemostatic agents; Antifibrinolytic agents [7, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • Antianaemics [7, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • Plasma substitutes; Perfusion solutions; Dialytics or haemodialytics; Drugs for electrolytic or acid-base disorders, e.g. hypovolemic shock (artificial tears A61P 27/04) [7, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • Antioedematous agents; Diuretics [7, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • Antidiuretics, e.g. drugs for diabetes insipidus (ADH A61P 5/10) [7, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Drugs for disorders of the cardiovascular system [7, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • Non-specific cardiovascular stimulants, e.g. drugs for syncope, antihypotensives [7, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • Inotropic agents, i.e. stimulants of cardiac contraction; Drugs for heart failure [7, 2006.01]
- 9/06 • Antiarrhythmics [7, 2006.01]
- 9/08 • Vasodilators for multiple indications [7, 2006.01]
- 9/10 • for treating ischaemic or atherosclerotic diseases, e.g. antianginal drugs, coronary vasodilators, drugs for myocardial infarction, retinopathy, cerebrovascula insufficiency, renal arteriosclerosis [7, 2006.01]
- 9/12 • Antihypertensives [7, 2006.01]
- 9/14 • Vasoprotectives; Antihaemorrhoidals; Drugs for varicose therapy; Capillary stabilisers [7, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Drugs for disorders of the respiratory system [7, 2006.01]**
- 11/02 • Nasal agents, e.g. decongestants [7, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • for throat disorders [7, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • Antiasthmatics [7, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • Bronchodilators [7, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • Expectorants [7, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • Mucolytics [7, 2006.01]
- 11/14 • Antitussive agents [7, 2006.01]
- 11/16 • Central respiratory analeptics [7, 2006.01]
- 13/00 Drugs for disorders of the urinary system (diuretics A61P 7/10) [7, 2006.01]**
- 13/02 • of urine or of the urinary tract, e.g. urine acidifiers [7, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • for urolithiasis [7, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • Anti-spasmodics [7, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • of the prostate [7, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • of the bladder [7, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • of the kidneys [7, 2006.01]
- 15/00 Drugs for genital or sexual disorders (for disorders of sex hormones A61P 5/24); Contraceptives [7, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • for disorders of the vagina [7, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • for inducing labour or abortion; Uterotonics [7, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • Antiabortive agents; Labour repressants [7, 2006.01]

- 15/08 • for gonadal disorders or for enhancing fertility, e.g. inducers of ovulation or of spermatogenesis [7, 2006.01]
- 15/10 • for impotence [7, 2006.01]
- 15/12 • for climacteric disorders [7, 2006.01]
- 15/14 • for lactation disorders, e.g. galactorrhoea [7, 2006.01]
- 15/16 • Masculine contraceptives [7, 2006.01]
- 15/18 • Feminine contraceptives [7, 2006.01]
- 17/00 Drugs for dermatological disorders [7, 2006.01]**
- 17/02 • for treating wounds, ulcers, burns, scars, keloids, or the like [7, 2006.01]
- 17/04 • Antipruritics [7, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • Antipsoriatics [7, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • Antiseborrheics [7, 2006.01]
- 17/10 • Anti-acne agents [7, 2006.01]
- 17/12 • Keratolytics, e.g. wart or anti-corn preparations [7, 2006.01]
- 17/14 • for baldness or alopecia [7, 2006.01]
- 17/16 • Emollients or protectives, e.g. against radiation [7, 2006.01]
- 17/18 • Antioxidants, e.g. antiradicals (preparations for protection against sunlight A61Q 17/00) [2006.01]
- 19/00 Drugs for skeletal disorders [7, 2006.01]**
- 19/02 • for joint disorders, e.g. arthritis, arthrosis [7, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • for non-specific disorders of the connective tissue [7, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • Antigout agents, e.g. antihyperuricemic or uricosuric agents [7, 2006.01]
- 19/08 • for bone diseases, e.g. rachitism, Paget's disease [7, 2006.01]
- 19/10 • • for osteoporosis [7, 2006.01]
- 21/00 Drugs for disorders of the muscular or neuromuscular system [7, 2006.01]**
- 21/02 • Muscle relaxants, e.g. for tetanus or cramps [7, 2006.01]
- 21/04 • for myasthenia gravis [7, 2006.01]
- 21/06 • Anabolic agents (androgens A61P 5/26) [7, 2006.01]
- 23/00 Anaesthetics [7, 2006.01]**
- 23/02 • Local anaesthetics [7, 2006.01]
- 25/00 Drugs for disorders of the nervous system [7, 2006.01]**
- 25/02 • for peripheral neuropathies [7, 2006.01]
- 25/04 • Centrally acting analgesics, e.g. opioids [7, 2006.01]
- 25/06 • Antimigraine agents [7, 2006.01]
- 25/08 • Antiepileptics; Anticonvulsants [7, 2006.01]
- 25/10 • • for petit-mal [7, 2006.01]
- 25/12 • • for grand-mal [7, 2006.01]
- 25/14 • for treating abnormal movements, e.g. chorea, dyskinesia [7, 2006.01]
- 25/16 • • Anti-Parkinson drugs [7, 2006.01]
- 25/18 • Antipsychotics, i.e. neuroleptics; Drugs for mania or schizophrenia [7, 2006.01]
- 25/20 • Hypnotics; Sedatives [7, 2006.01]
- 25/22 • Anxiolytics [7, 2006.01]
- 25/24 • Antidepressants [7, 2006.01]
- 25/26 • Psychostimulants, e.g. nicotine, cocaine [7, 2006.01]
- 25/28 • for treating neurodegenerative disorders of the central nervous system, e.g. nootropic agents, cognition enhancers, drugs for treating Alzheimer's disease or other forms of dementia [7, 2006.01]
- 25/30 • for treating abuse or dependence [7, 2006.01]
- 25/32 • • Alcohol-abuse [7, 2006.01]
- 25/34 • • Tobacco-abuse [7, 2006.01]
- 25/36 • • Opioid-abuse [7, 2006.01]
- 27/00 Drugs for disorders of the senses [7, 2006.01]**
- 27/02 • Ophthalmic agents [7, 2006.01]
- 27/04 • • Artificial tears; Irrigation solutions [7, 2006.01]
- 27/06 • • Antiglaucoma agents or miotics [7, 2006.01]
- 27/08 • • Mydriatics or cycloplegics [7, 2006.01]
- 27/10 • • for accommodation disorders, e.g. myopia [7, 2006.01]
- 27/12 • • for cataracts [7, 2006.01]
- 27/14 • • Decongestants or antiallergics [7, 2006.01]
- 27/16 • Otologicals [7, 2006.01]
- 29/00 Non-central analgesic, antipyretic or antiinflammatory agents, e.g. antirheumatic agents; Non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) [7, 2006.01]**
- 29/02 • without antiinflammatory effect [7, 2006.01]
- 31/00 Antiinfectives, i.e. antibiotics, antiseptics, chemotherapeutics [7, 2006.01]**
- 31/02 • Local antiseptics [7, 2006.01]
- 31/04 • Antibacterial agents [7, 2006.01]
- 31/06 • • for tuberculosis [7, 2006.01]
- 31/08 • • for leprosy [7, 2006.01]
- 31/10 • Antimycotics [7, 2006.01]
- 31/12 • Antivirals [7, 2006.01]
- 31/14 • • for RNA viruses [7, 2006.01]
- 31/16 • • • for influenza or rhinoviruses [7, 2006.01]
- 31/18 • • • for HIV [7, 2006.01]
- 31/20 • • for DNA viruses [7, 2006.01]
- 31/22 • • • for herpes viruses [7, 2006.01]
- 33/00 Antiparasitic agents [7, 2006.01]**
- 33/02 • Antiprotozoals, e.g. for leishmaniasis, trichomoniasis, toxoplasmosis [7, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • • Amoebicides [7, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • • Antimalarials [7, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • for Pneumocystis carinii [7, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • Anthelmintics [7, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • Schistosomicides [7, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • Ectoparasiticides, e.g. scabicides [7, 2006.01]
- 35/00 Antineoplastic agents [7, 2006.01]**
- 35/02 • specific for leukemia [7, 2006.01]
- 35/04 • specific for metastasis [7, 2006.01]
- 37/00 Drugs for immunological or allergic disorders [7, 2006.01]**
- 37/02 • Immunomodulators [7, 2006.01]
- 37/04 • • Immunostimulants [7, 2006.01]
- 37/06 • • Immunosuppressants, e.g. drugs for graft rejection [7, 2006.01]
- 37/08 • Antiallergic agents (asthmatic agents A61P 11/06; ophthalmic antiallergics A61P 27/14) [7, 2006.01]
- 39/00 General protective or antinoxious agents [7, 2006.01]**
- 39/02 • Antidotes [7, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • Chelating agents [7, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • Free radical scavengers or antioxidants [7, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Drugs used in surgical methods, e.g. surgery adjuvants for preventing adhesion or for vitreum substitution [7, 2006.01]**

43/00 Drugs for specific purposes, not provided for in groups A61P 1/00-A61P 41/00 [7, 2006.01]**Note(s) [2010.01]**

Classification is only made in this group when a specific therapeutic activity for a chemical compound or medicinal preparation has been clearly disclosed, the specific therapeutic activity not being appropriate to any of groups A61P 1/00-A61P 41/00.

A61Q SPECIFIC USE OF COSMETICS OR SIMILAR TOILET PREPARATIONS [2006.01]**Note(s) [2006.01, 2012.01]**

1. This subclass covers the use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations already classified as such in main group A61K 8/00, in subclasses C11D or C12N, or in classes C01, C07 or C08.
2. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in subclass A61P if the preparation is stated to have therapeutic activity.
3. In this subclass, the use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations is classified in all appropriate places.
4. Attention is drawn to cases where the subject of the invention concerns only the specific use of cosmetics or toilet preparations, and the chemical structure, compound, mixture or composition of this subject of the invention is known. In such cases, classification is made in main group A61K 8/00 or in subclass C11D, and also in subclass A61Q as invention information. In addition, if the chemical structure, compound, mixture or composition or any individual ingredient of a mixture or composition is considered to represent information of interest for search, it may also be classified as additional information.
5. The classification symbols of this subclass are not listed first when assigned to patent documents.

1/00 Make-up preparations; Body powders; Preparations for removing make-up [2006.01]

- 1/02 • Preparations containing skin colorants, e.g. pigments (preparations in powder form A61Q 1/12) [2006.01]
- 1/04 • • for lips [2006.01]
- 1/06 • • • Lipsticks [2006.01]
- 1/08 • • for cheeks, e.g. rouge [2006.01]
- 1/10 • • for eyes, e.g. eyeliner, mascara [2006.01]
- 1/12 • Face or body powders, e.g. for grooming, adorning or absorbing [2006.01]
- 1/14 • Preparations for removing make-up [2006.01]

3/00 Manicure or pedicure preparations [2006.01]

- 3/02 • Nail coatings [2006.01]
- 3/04 • Nail coating removers [2006.01]

5/00 Preparations for care of the hair [2006.01]

- 5/02 • Preparations for cleaning the hair [2006.01]
- 5/04 • Preparations for permanent waving or straightening the hair [2006.01]
- 5/06 • Preparations for styling the hair, e.g. by temporary shaping or colouring [2006.01]
- 5/08 • Preparations for bleaching the hair [2006.01]
- 5/10 • Preparations for permanently dyeing the hair [2006.01]
- 5/12 • Preparations containing hair conditioners [2006.01]

7/00 Preparations for affecting hair growth [2006.01]

- 7/02 • Preparations for inhibiting or slowing hair growth [2006.01]

9/00 Preparations for removing hair or for aiding hair removal [2006.01]

- 9/02 • Shaving preparations [2006.01]
- 9/04 • Depilatories [2006.01]

11/00 Preparations for care of the teeth, of the oral cavity or of dentures, e.g. dentifrices or toothpastes; Mouth rinses [2006.01]

- 11/02 • Preparations for deodorising, bleaching or disinfecting dentures [2006.01]

13/00 Formulations or additives for perfume preparations (essential oils or perfumes *per se* C11B 9/00) [2006.01]**15/00 Anti-perspirants or body deodorants (deodorisation of air A61L 9/00) [2006.01]****17/00 Barrier preparations; Preparations brought into direct contact with the skin for affording protection against external influences, e.g. sunlight, X-rays or other harmful rays, corrosive materials, bacteria or insect stings [2006.01]**

- 17/02 • containing insect repellants [2006.01]
- 17/04 • Topical preparations for affording protection against sunlight or other radiation; Topical sun tanning preparations [2006.01]

19/00 Preparations for care of the skin [2006.01]

- 19/02 • for chemically bleaching or whitening the skin [2006.01]
- 19/04 • for chemically tanning the skin (topical sun tanning preparations A61Q 17/04) [2006.01]
- 19/06 • for countering cellulitis [2006.01]
- 19/08 • Anti-ageing preparations [2006.01]
- 19/10 • Washing or bathing preparations [2006.01]

90/00 Cosmetics or similar toilet preparations for specific uses not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]**Note(s) [2010.01]**

Classification is only made in this group when a specific use for a cosmetic or similar toilet preparation has been clearly disclosed, the specific use not being appropriate to any of the preceding groups in this subclass.